

The background of the cover features a dark blue diagonal band on the left side. Behind this band and extending across the top and right is a light grey graphic consisting of a grid of white-outlined rectangular blocks, some of which are slightly offset to create a 3D effect. In the background, a blurred image of a modern skyscraper is visible.

# Conservation Management Plan


## Fort Scratchley Historic Site

Corner Nobbys Road and Fort Drive, Newcastle East NSW 2300

Prepared for the City of Newcastle

FINAL July 2024

## REPORT REVISION HISTORY

Revision	Date Issued	Revision Description		
01	10/04/24	DRAFT		
		<b>Prepared by</b>	<b>Reviewed by</b>	<b>Verified by</b>
		Michael Liang <i>Assistant Heritage Consultant</i>	Carole-Lynne Kerrigan <i>Associate Director - Heritage</i>	 Kerime Danis <i>Director - Heritage</i>
		Pamela Jeffery <i>Senior Heritage Consultant</i>		
		Asmita Bhasin <i>Heritage Consultant</i>		
02	29/05/24	FINAL		
		<b>Prepared by</b>	<b>Reviewed by</b>	<b>Verified by</b>
		Michael Liang <i>Assistant Heritage Consultant</i>	Kerime Danis <i>Director - Heritage</i>	Kerime Danis <i>Director - Heritage</i>

*This report has been reviewed and approved for issue in accordance with City Plan's quality assurance policy and procedures.*

### Acknowledgement of Country

City Plan acknowledges the First Nations Peoples upon whose lands and waters we live and work, we respect their cultural heritage and continuing connection to Country and thank them for protecting the coastline and its ecosystems through time. We acknowledge that sovereignty over these lands and waters has never been ceded and extend our respect to Elders past, present and emerging.

We proudly operate from the lands of the Gadigal, Darkinyung, Danggan Balun and Turrbal Peoples.

### Copyright

Historical sources and reference material used in the preparation of this report are acknowledged and referenced at the end of each section and/or in figure captions. Reasonable effort has been made to identify, contact, acknowledge and obtain permission to use material from the relevant copyright owners.

Unless otherwise specified or agreed, copyright in this report vests in City Plan Heritage P/L and in the owners of any pre-existing historic sources or reference material.

### Disclaimer

This report has been prepared by City Plan Heritage P/L with input from a number of other expert consultants (if relevant). To the best of our knowledge, the information contained herein is neither false nor misleading and the contents are based on information and facts that were correct at the time of writing. City Plan Heritage P/L accepts no responsibility or liability for any errors, omissions or resultant consequences including any loss or damage arising from reliance in information in this publication.

### Right to use

City Plan grants to the client for this project (and the client's successors in title) a perpetual royalty-free right to reproduce or use the material from this report, except where such use infringes the copyright of City Plan Heritage P/L or third parties.

Copyright © City Plan Heritage P/L  
ABN 46 103 185 413

### City Plan Heritage P/L

Level 6, 120 Sussex St, Sydney NSW 2000

P +61 2 8270 3500

[CITYPLAN.COM.AU](http://CITYPLAN.COM.AU)

M:\CPHeritage\Cph-2023\23-115 Fort Scratchley, Newcastle\3. Report\CMP\_Fort Scratchley, Newcastle\_FINAL Accepted Changes 02072024.docx

Page | i

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

This Conservation Management Plan has been prepared to provide a long term framework for the ongoing management and conservation of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site. It considers the assessments of significance and policies of previous management plans to provide an updated and usable document for use by the City of Newcastle and the site's managers to ensure that the site's significant values are effectively retained and conserved. This Conservation Management Plan confirms the significant values of the place based on previous reports, historical and documentary evidence and an analysis of the physical evidence and its condition.

### Revised Statement of Significance

Fort Scratchley is of State heritage significance for its contribution to the development of Australia's early colonial history, serving as a particularly fine and intact example of a coastal fortification based on British military planning principles. The gun emplacements and tunnels complex designed by Sirs Peter Scratchley and William Jervis evidence military planning principles of British fortifications through its siting on a prominent position on top Signal Hill overlooking the mouth of the Hunter River, and the inclusion of a dry ditch, inner fort wall with embrasures, casemate batteries, and associated structures allowing the Fort to operate self-sufficiently. The site also shares many design principles with other coastal fortifications in Australia, such as Bare Island Fort, Georges Head Battery, and Fort Queenscliff, and New Zealand, at sites like Fort Ballance and Fort Jervis.

The barracks complex designed by Gustavus A. Morrell with oversight from James Barnet from the NSW Colonial Architect's office are also a particularly fine example of Victorian Regency design, with cohesive and harmonious designs consistent with other neoclassical barracks designs of the period. The buildings of the barracks complex are rare extant examples of their type, sharing many design principles such as their rectangular arrangements with restrained ornamentation, classically proportioned façades, corrugated metal roofs and verandahs, verandah colonnades, sash windows.

Fort Scratchley also serves as a rare example of Australian defence sites as the only coastal fortification that fired guns in anger at an enemy vessel during the Second World War, on 7-8 June 1942. Fort Scratchley makes a considerable contribution to the military history of NSW as an early defence site that has been modified and upgraded with new military technologies and armaments in response to the evolving needs of warfare. The subject site is also significant for its associations with the early convict settlement of the Newcastle region, as the rich coal deposits underneath and around Signal Hill provided a stimulus for settlement of the region in addition to the relocation of rebels associated with the Vinegar Hill convict uprising.

### Structure of this CMP

- Section 1 provides an outline of this CMP, including an identification of this CMP's methodology and terminology.
- Section 2 outlines the historical context of the site. This includes an account of the key phases of the fort's development, from the pre European settlement of Newcastle, to the construction of temporary and then permanent fortifications in the 19th Century, to the usage of the site in the First and Second World Wars, and the reconstruction works of the 1970s.
- Section 3 identifies the physical evidence and condition of the existing site, including identification of significant views and curtilage. This section also incorporates a comparative analysis of the fort with other like sites across Australia and New Zealand.
- Section 4 includes an assessment of the site's heritage significance, including a revised statement of significance.
- Section 5 identifies opportunities and constraints for the site. This incorporates the current statutory and non-statutory frameworks, best practice heritage guidance, the relevant approval processes for developing the site and obligations under the Heritage Act.
- Section 6 identifies the various conservation policies applicable for the site.
- Section 7 of this CMP establishes the Implementation Strategy for Fort Scratchley. It identifies the process for implementing the conservation policies for the site and provides recommendations for specific conservation works to be undertaken.



**THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK**



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>Executive Summary .....</b>	<b>ii</b>
<b>1. Introduction .....</b>	<b>8</b>
1.1. Background .....	8
1.2. The Site .....	8
1.3. Methodology .....	8
1.4. Terminology .....	10
1.5. Limitations .....	11
1.6. Author Identification .....	11
1.7. Acknowledgments .....	11
1.8. Sources of Information .....	11
1.9. Abbreviations .....	12
<b>2. Historical Context.....</b>	<b>13</b>
2.1. Awabakal Country .....	13
2.2. Early European Settlement .....	14
2.3. Signal Hill .....	15
2.3.1. Early fortifications for Newcastle.....	17
2.4. Fort Scratchley .....	19
2.4.1. Construction of Temporary Fortifications.....	19
2.4.2. Construction of Permanent Fortifications.....	19
2.4.3. Later modifications to Fort Scratchley .....	22
2.5. Fort Scratchley in the 20th century .....	25
2.6. Fort Scratchley after WWII: 1945-1972.....	30
2.7. Fort Scratchley: conservation and reconstruction 1972-2004 .....	32
2.8. Summary Timeline .....	35
2.9. Key Phases of Development.....	39
2.9.1. Phase 1: Pre-Settlement - Early 1800s .....	41
2.9.2. Phase 2: 1811-1878 .....	42
2.9.3. Phase 3: 1878-1880 .....	44
2.9.4. Phase 4: 1880-1886 .....	46
2.9.5. Phase 5: 1889-1894 .....	50
2.9.6. Phase 6: 1910-1920s.....	52
2.9.7. Phase 7: 1939-1945 .....	54
2.9.8. Phase 8: 1974-1977 .....	56
2.9.9. Phase 9: 1978-1986 .....	60
2.9.10. Phase 10: 2005-2008 .....	62
2.10. Figures associated with the site.....	63
<b>3. Physical Evidence .....</b>	<b>68</b>

3.1. Setting .....	68
3.2. Landscape.....	68
3.3. Physical Description.....	70
3.3.1. Outer Fort.....	70
3.3.2. Inner Fort (East).....	77
3.3.3. Gun Emplacements and Tunnels .....	98
3.4. General Condition .....	112
3.5. Views.....	120
3.6. Curtilage.....	132
3.7. Comparative Analysis .....	133
3.7.1. Generally.....	133
3.7.2. Australian coastal fortifications .....	135
3.7.3. New Zealand Coastal Fortifications .....	141
3.7.4. Time guns .....	143
<b>4. Assessment of Heritage Significance .....</b>	<b>144</b>
4.1. Heritage Council of New South Wales Heritage Criteria .....	144
4.1.1. Threshold for inclusion.....	145
4.2. Heritage Significance Assessment .....	145
4.2.1. Basis of Assessment.....	145
4.2.2. Assessment Criteria.....	145
4.3. Existing Statements of Significance .....	151
4.4. Revised Statement of Significance .....	153
4.5. Other Heritage Listings .....	154
4.5.1. State Historical Themes.....	154
4.6. Significant Components .....	159
4.6.1. Gradings of Significance .....	159
4.6.2. Integrity and Condition .....	178
4.6.3. Significance Grading Diagrams .....	178
<b>5. Opportunities and Constraints .....</b>	<b>183</b>
5.1. Generally .....	183
5.2. Constraints Arising from Heritage Significance .....	183
5.3. Legislative Heritage Framework .....	183
5.3.1. Commonwealth Government Requirements .....	184
5.3.2. New South Wales Government Requirements.....	184
5.3.3. Local Government Requirements .....	185
5.4. Non-statutory Considerations .....	186
5.4.1. National Trust (NSW) Register .....	186
5.4.2. Register of the National Estate .....	186

5.4.3. Engineers Australia.....	187
5.4.4. Fort Scratchley Plan of Management 2013 .....	187
5.5. Best-practice heritage guidance .....	187
5.5.1. The Burra Charter .....	187
5.5.2. Other Relevant Resources .....	188
5.6. Approval Process .....	188
5.6.1. Development with Consent.....	188
5.6.2. Development without consent.....	188
5.6.3. Exempt development .....	189
5.6.4. Complying Development.....	189
5.7. Heritage Act Approvals .....	189
5.7.1. Section 60 Approvals .....	189
5.7.2. Exemptions from Approval.....	189
5.8. Implications arising from Physical Condition.....	190
5.9. Owner/Manager Requirements .....	190
5.10. Future Development.....	191
<b>6. Conservation Policies.....</b>	<b>195</b>
6.1. Introduction .....	195
6.2. Acceptable Actions Generally .....	195
6.3. Policy Recommendations.....	196
6.4. Basis of Conservation Approach.....	196
6.5. Management of the Heritage Asset .....	197
6.6. Statutory Listing .....	198
6.7. Sustainability .....	198
6.8. Aboriginal and Archaeological Resources .....	199
6.9. Curtilage, Setting and Views .....	199
6.10. Parking .....	200
6.11. Ongoing and Compatible Uses .....	200
6.12. Future Development.....	201
6.13. Treatment of Building Fabric.....	203
6.13.1. Investigation.....	203
6.13.2. External Form and Internal Spaces .....	203
6.13.3. Roof Fabric and Features .....	204
6.13.4. Decorative Finishes .....	204
6.13.5. Interior and Exterior Lighting .....	205
6.13.6. Signage.....	206
6.13.7. Hazardous Materials.....	206
6.13.8. Maintenance .....	207

6.13.9. Graffiti Removal .....	208
6.13.10. Compliance with Codes and Regulations .....	208
6.14. Moveable Heritage .....	209
6.15. Protecting and Promoting Conservation .....	209
6.15.1. Interpretation .....	209
6.15.2. Community Consultation .....	210
6.15.3. Record Keeping .....	210
6.15.4. Risk Management .....	211
6.16. Adoption & Management of this CMP .....	211
<b>7. Implementation Strategy .....</b>	<b>212</b>
7.1. Responsibility for Implementation of Policies .....	212
7.2. Funding .....	212
7.3. Review and Monitoring of Conservation Management Plan .....	212
7.4. Resolution of Conflict Between User Needs and Heritage Significance .....	212
7.5. Proposed Timing of Works .....	213
7.6. Recommended Conservation Works .....	213
7.7. Recommendations for Specific Conservation Works .....	214
7.7.1. Building Exteriors .....	214
7.7.2. Building Interiors .....	214
7.7.3. Barracks Complex Retaining Wall .....	215
7.8. Planned Maintenance .....	215
<b>8. References .....</b>	<b>216</b>
<b>9. FIGURES .....</b>	<b>219</b>
<b>10. Appendices .....</b>	<b>231</b>
10.1. Appendix A - Standard Exemptions under s 57 of the Heritage Act 1977 .....	232

**LISTS OF FIGURES & TABLES ARE INCLUDED IN SECTION 9 OF THIS CMP.**

## 1. INTRODUCTION

### 1.1. Background

In October 2023 City of Newcastle Council commissioned City Plan Heritage (CPH) to prepare a Conservation Management Plan (CMP) for the Fort Scratchley Historic Site, located at Newcastle East, which was transferred from the Department of Defence to the City of Newcastle Council in June 2008. The transfer of ownership required the nomination and inclusion of the site on the NSW State Heritage Register (SHR item no. 01674), and consequent statutory protection of Fort Scratchley under the NSW *Heritage Act 1977*. The site's other listing statuses are included at Section 4.5.

This CMP is intended to guide conservation and heritage management of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site, including its buildings, landscape features and setting. It primarily incorporates content from the 2008 Fort Scratchley Heritage Management Plan prepared by Suters Architects in collaboration with Dawbin Architects, and its 2013 revision, the 2013 Fort Scratchley Plan of Management. It includes a broad overview of conservation approaches to ensure the long-term conservation and presentation of the subject site, and provides a framework for the ongoing care and management of the property, including decisions about its use and development. It also provides a reference for future applications for works to the property.

### 1.2. The Site

The Fort Scratchley Historic Site is located approximately 118km northeast of Sydney's Central Business District (CBD) within the City of Newcastle Local Government Area. Situated within a public recreation area of Newcastle East, the area forms part of southern peninsula at the entrance to Port Hunter and the Hunter River. The Newcastle Central Business District (CBD) is located approximately 1km to the west. The site includes a single lot, Lot 1, DP407886, covering a land area of approximately 3.63Ha, and is immediately bound by Fort Drive and Nobbys Road, Newcastle East, with views to Newcastle CBD, Nobbys Head and the Hunter River.

The site (refer to Figure 60 for site map) comprises an inner fort made up of battery structures, such as gun emplacements, observation point and associated tunnels, the Commandant's Cottage, the Barracks Complex of dwellings and associated structures on the lower apron of the inner fort. The outer fort (see Figure 1) includes structures such as the Master Gunner's Cottage (now the Fort Scratchley Historical Society Office), Workshop and multipurpose Hall, and carpark. The Hall and associated Café were constructed to provide further cash-flow activities prior to the transfer of ownership from the Australian Government to the City of Newcastle Council.

### 1.3. Methodology

The methodology adopted in the preparation of this report is generally consistent with that set out in the following documents:

- *The Burra Charter: Australia ICOMOS Charter for the Conservation of Places of Cultural Significance 2013* (The Burra Charter).
- *The Conservation Plan* by Dr James Semple Kerr (7th Edition, 2013) published digitally by Australia ICOMOS.
- The State of NSW and Department of Planning and Environment's *Assessing Heritage Significance* guidelines 2023.
- The Heritage Council of NSW guidelines, checklist, model brief, and *Statement for Best Practice for CMPs*, all published in 2021.<sup>1</sup>

Figure 3 describes the process for conserving heritage items embodied in a CMP.

<sup>1</sup> CMP guidelines can be found at <https://www.environment.nsw.gov.au/topics/heritage/manage-heritage-items/conservation-management-plans>





Figure 1. Detailed aerial view of Lot 1, DP407886 (subject site shaded red) showing the various built elements located within the subject site. The inner fort precinct is shaded blue. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)



Figure 2. Location of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site (shaded red) within the wider Newcastle area. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)



Figure 3. The Australia ICOMOS Burra Charter process. Source: *The Burra Charter: The Australia ICOMOS Charter for Places of Cultural Significance*, 2013, p. 10.

This CMP considers the contents of the 2008 Coal River Precinct Conservation and Tourism Management Plan, the 2008 Heritage Management Plan (SUTERS Architects in association with DAWBIN Architects) and the 2013 Plan of Management, and concentrates on confirming the heritage significance of the site, its components and setting. The site's values have previously been assessed as part of preparation of these documents and for the preparation of the 1992 Godden Mackay Conservation Plan for Fort Scratchley. However, this CMP primarily considers the assessment contained in the 2008 Heritage Management Plan as the most up-to-date document. The 2008 Heritage Management Plan assessed the site's values against the Australian Government's National Heritage List Criteria and NSW Heritage Council criteria. This CMP revises these assessments and provides appropriate conservation policies that consider current constraints and opportunities, as well as guidance on their implementation.

#### 1.4. Terminology

Terminology used in this CMP is consistent with meaning given in the Australia ICOMOS Burra Charter 2013, the *Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979*, and the *NSW Heritage Act 1977*.



## 1.5. Limitations

Visual inspections of the buildings were carried out from ground level or internal floor level. Inspections of the building fabric were carried out without physical intervention, and while the building was occupied and operational.

This CMP does not consider the Aboriginal values and cultural heritage of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site, as they are considered in the following City of Newcastle Council plans and strategies:

- City of Newcastle Aboriginal Heritage Management Strategy 2018-2021.
- City of Newcastle Heritage Strategy 2020-2030.
- City of Newcastle Heritage Strategy Action Plan.
- Section 5.10 of the *Newcastle Local Environmental Plan 2012*.
- Section B4 of the *Newcastle Development Control Plan 2023*.

## 1.6. Author Identification

The following members of CPH were involved in the preparation of the CMP:

- Kerime Danis, Director (BArch, MHeritCons (Hons), Associate RAI, MICOMOS & AdCom)
- Pam Jeffery, Senior Heritage Consultant (BA BSc(Arch), BArch, MheritCons. MICOMOS)
- Asmita Bhasin, Heritage Consultant (MURbanism (HeritCons), BArch, MICOMOS)
- Michael Liang, Assistant Heritage Consultant (BSc, MHL, MHeritCons)

Photographs and illustrations used throughout this report were the work of CPH unless otherwise stated. Historical sources and reference material used in the preparation of this report are acknowledged and referenced in text and in figure captions.

This report incorporates text and information contained in the following documents:

- Future City Group of The City of Newcastle. *Plan of management: Fort Scratchley 2013*. September 2013, Report prepared for the City of Newcastle Council.
- SUTERS Architects in association with DAWBIN Architects. *Heritage Management Plan: Fort Scratchley Historic Site, cnr Nobbys Road and Fort Drive, Newcastle East*. 27 May 2008, Report prepared for the Australian Government (Department of Finance and Deregulation).
- Boyce Pizzey Strategic. *Coal River Precinct Conservation and Tourism Management Plan*. 2007, Report prepared for the City of Newcastle Council.
- Godden Mackay. *Fort Scratchley, Newcastle. Conservation Plan, Final Report*. 1992, reprinted 1996, Report prepared for the Commonwealth of Australia.

## 1.7. Acknowledgments

CPH gratefully acknowledges the assistance of the following individuals and organisations in preparing this CMP:

- Mr Nigel George, Head of System Administration, City of Newcastle
- Friends of Fort Scratchley
- Ms Laila Ellmoos, Historian. Ms Ellmoos researched and wrote the history contained in the HMP (2008); and
- Rod Caldwell, Engineer and Heritage Consultant, Chairman of Engineering Heritage (Newcastle). Mr Caldwell provided cultural and historical heritage advice on the maintenance and conservation of Fort Scratchley ca2000. He was the main contributor to the Historical Comparative Analysis section of the HMP (2008).

## 1.8. Sources of Information

CPH consulted the following documentary sources in the preparation of this CMP:



- Heritage NSW
  - Online reference library
- National Library of Australia
  - Trove search engine
- City of Newcastle Council
  - Maps and Plans, Photographs, Annual Reports, Building Files.
- NSW Land Registry Services
  - Old Systems Titles, Torrens Titles, Parish Maps
- State Library of New South Wales
  - Mitchell Library - Maps, Plans, Small Pictures File, Monographs
  - Dixon Library
  - Maps and Plans, Photographs, Annual Reports, Building Files.
- University of Newcastle Living Histories website

## 1.9. Abbreviations

The following abbreviations have been used throughout this report:

*Table 1. List of abbreviations.*

Abbreviation	Item
<b>A/NSW</b>	Archives Office of NSW
<b>BCA</b>	Building Code of Australia
<b>Burra Charter</b>	<i>The Burra Charter: The Australia ICOMOS Charter for Places of Cultural Significance, 2013.</i>
<b>CMP</b>	Conservation Management Plan
<b>CPH</b>	City Plan Heritage
<b>DFG</b>	Australian Government Department of Finance
<b>EPBC</b>	<i>Environment Protection and Biodiversity Act 1999 (Cth)</i>
<b>GAO</b>	Government Architect's Office (NSW)
<b>HAAP</b>	Heritage Asset Action Plan
<b>HMP</b>	Heritage Management Plan
<b>HNSW</b>	Heritage NSW
<b>ICOMOS</b>	International Council on Monuments and Sites
<b>LEP</b>	Local Environmental Plan
<b>ML</b>	Mitchell Library
<b>NCC</b>	National Construction Code of Australia
<b>NCLA</b>	Newcastle Public Library Archives
<b>NCC</b>	City of Newcastle Council

## 2. HISTORICAL CONTEXT

The following historical context of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site incorporates information from the 2008 Heritage Management Plan prepared by Suters Architects in association with Dawbin Architects.

The current Fort Scratchley Historic Site has had numerous different names over the early period of Newcastle's settlement. These names include Collier's Point, Beacon Hill, Fort Fiddlesticks, Signal Hill, Flagstaff Hill, and Allan's (or Allen's) Hill. The name Fort Scratchley was only given to the site following the completion of permanent fortifications in the late 1880s. The first mention of the name Fort Scratchley so far noted can be attributed to a Sydney Morning Herald article dated 23 November 1886, while the first official mention of the name can be attributed to a series of plans issued by the Colonial Architect's Office dated 17 December 1888.<sup>2</sup> The fort is so named in honour of Sir Peter Scratchley who had died en route to Australia after contracting malaria in Papua New Guinea.<sup>3</sup>

For the period prior to fortification, the site will be referred to as Signal Hill, and will be referred to as Fort Scratchley for the period following fortification to the present. This has been done to ensure consistency with the 2008 Heritage Management Plan.



Figure 4. Artistic rendition of view over Newcastle Harbour. Note Nobbys Island and Signal Hill in the distance with flag staff and signal station. (Source: [Aborigines resting by camp fire, near the mouth of the Hunter River, Newcastle, New South Wales] [picture] / [Joseph Lycett], c.1817. National Library of Australia, PIC MS STRONG ROOM 12/1/4 #R5684)

### 2.1. Awabakal Country

Prior to European Settlement, the Newcastle area was occupied by the Awabakal and Worimi peoples. The site is primarily associated with the Awabakal nation, whose lands are generally bound by Lake Macquarie to the south and the Hunter River to the north, and is currently located within the boundaries

<sup>2</sup> Richard Selwyn Mort, ed., Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, New South Wales, (Newcastle: Newey & beath Printers, 1986), 7.

<sup>3</sup> R.B. Joyce, "Sir Peter Henry Scratchley (1835-1885)," in Australian Dictionary of Biography, National Centre of Biography, Australian National University, <https://adb.anu.edu.au/biography/scratchley-sir-peter-henry-4552>, published first in hardcopy 1976, accessed January 18, 2024.

of the Awabakal Local Aboriginal Land Council.<sup>4</sup> The traditional name for the hill on which Fort Scratchley Historic Site sits is 'Tahlbinh' and is related to the former Nobbys Island formation, 'Whibayganba'. On-site interpretation at Fort Scratchley describes the site as "the place from where the great kangaroo leapt into the rough seas, he then swam to the safety of the island Whibayganba...[it] is a prominent observation point a lookout with views in every direction. A place to view and to listen to Country, the movements of wildlife, the changes in the weather and seasons, and the magnificent night sky".

Archaeological evidence at sites in the Newcastle Central Business District suggest that Aboriginal occupation of the area has occurred during the Holocene era.<sup>5</sup> Observations from British settlers, including missionaries and military officers, describe an abundance of subsistence resources due to the site's coastal locality, characterised by lakes, wetlands, and estuaries. Within close proximity to the mouth of the Hunter River, fish such as mullet and salmon were caught by line and spear fishing from canoes, and were regularly eaten with lobsters, oysters and cockles. Mammals including whales, kangaroos, and bandicoots, as well as reptiles (e.g. snakes and lizards) and birds (mutton bird) were also traditional dietary staples.<sup>6</sup> The coastal landscape also provided a variety of material resources such as stone (e.g. quartz), iron, glass, and timber which were used to build tools, weapons, canoes, and huts.<sup>7</sup>

Following European contact in the early nineteenth-century, Aboriginal populations were confronted with land dispossession and conflict. Despite the impact of European settlement, Aboriginal occupation of the area and an Aboriginal economy is evident at nearby Aboriginal sites due to the presence of middens, grinding areas, clay digs and stone tools.<sup>8</sup> This is supported by archaeological investigations of nearby sites such as the neighbouring Convict Lumber Yard.<sup>9</sup> Histories recall Reverend Lancelot Threlkeld as a particularly notable figure in the area. Threlkeld was a Congregational minister and missionary that settled in the Newcastle and Lake Macquarie area in the 1830s. Threlkeld chose to live among and befriend local Awabakal people in order to learn their language for his central task of translating the Bible into Awabakal. His collection, and publications ensured that the language was recorded. His collections have underpinned the retention and revival of the Awabakal language.<sup>10</sup>

## 2.2. Early European Settlement

The region now known as Newcastle was first noted by Captain Cook in 1770, however, the area was not mapped until Lieutenant Shortland explored around the mouth and inlets of the Hunter River in a search for convicts who had escaped from Sydney.<sup>11</sup> During this expedition north, Shortland described to the First Fleet diarist David Collins "a considerable quantity of very good coal, and lying so near the water side as to be conveniently shipped".<sup>12</sup> Samples of this coal were transported to India and other overseas locations by 1799. It is believed that the discovery of coal was the stimulus for settling the Newcastle area, which was first attempted in 1801 when Governor King sent a contingent of convicts and a military officer to an outpost on the southern side of the Hunter River, also known as Coal Harbour.<sup>13</sup> This colony was left to mine the abundant coal seams on Signal Hill (also known as Collier's Point and where the current Fort Scratchley Historic Site sits), before Governor King withdrew the colonists in February 1802.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>4</sup> Norman B. Tindale, "Aboriginal Tribes of Australia: Their Terrain, Environmental Controls, Distribution, Limits, and Proper Names," (Canberra: Australian National University Press, 1974), 191.

<sup>5</sup> Archaeological Management & Consulting Group Pty Ltd, "Archaeological Assessment, Research Design & Excavation Methodology: Legacy House, formerly Dangar Chambers 45 Bolton Street Newcastle NSW," September 2003, 12.

<sup>6</sup> Australian Museum Business Services, "Aboriginal Heritage Study: Newcastle Local Government Area," December 7, 2005, 35-38.

<sup>7</sup> Australian Museum Business Services, 38-39.

<sup>8</sup> Coal River Working Party in conjunction with the NSW Heritage Office, "Coal River Precinct Walk brochure," accessed February 5, 2024, <https://uoncc.files.wordpress.com/2008/03/coalriverprecinctwalk.pdf>.

<sup>9</sup> Archaeological Management & Consulting Group, "Research Design, Excavation Methodology & Heritage Impact Statement: Shortland Esplanade, Newcastle, NSW," September 2013, 17.

<sup>10</sup> Niel Gunson, "Lancelot Edward Threlkeld (1788-1859)," in Australian Dictionary of Biography, Volume 2, (Melbourne: Melbourne University Press, 1967), 528-530.

<sup>11</sup> Australian Museum Business Services, 39.

<sup>12</sup> David Collins, "An Account of the English Colony in NSW From Its First Settlement, in January 1788, to August 1801. Volume 2," (Sydney, University of Sydney Library, 2003), 40.

<sup>13</sup> Frederick Watson, Peter Chapman, and Australia, "Historical Records of Australia. Series 1, Volume 3," (Sydney: Library Committee of the Commonwealth Parliament, 1914), 174-175.

<sup>14</sup> Historical Records of Australia Vol. 3, 528.

The second attempt at settling the Newcastle area occurred in 1804, during which Lieutenant Charles Menzies, accompanied by a number of military officers, a surgeon, an overseer and thirty four Irish convicts arrived to settle the site.<sup>15</sup> This settlement was formed primarily in response to the Vinegar Hill convict rebellion which had occurred the month prior.<sup>16</sup> The colony would slowly grow with the arrival of ships such as *The Coromandel*, that provided human cargo of convicts to aid in coal mining and timber-felling.<sup>17</sup> By 1810, the size of the settlement grew to approximately 100 people.<sup>18</sup> Newcastle's purpose as a site of secondary punishment for re-offending convicts ceased in 1822 and by this time was opened up to free settlers. Most of the convict population were relocated to Port Macquarie, with a small contingent of convicts left to continue mining coal.

### 2.3. Signal Hill

During Lieutenant Menzies command of Newcastle's second settlement, he recognised the need for defences whereby "a few guns could be placed to great advantage on a commanding height above the town so as to prevent any vessel, in case of being seized by convicts while up Paterson's River, from getting out of the harbour".<sup>19</sup> It was envisaged that these defences would sit upon Signal Hill in order to prevent convicts escaping from the colony, rather than defending the town from an external threat. The following Commander of Newcastle (from 1811-1814) Lieutenant Thomas Skottowe erected a coal beacon and flagstaff on Signal Hill in 1813, to aid ships attempting to find the port.<sup>20</sup> This structure was recorded in 1819 as a "small stone tower with Lighthouse".<sup>21</sup> In 1821-1822, Lieutenant Edward Close, the Acting Engineer based in Newcastle, oversaw construction of structures on Signal Hill, including a "neat sort of pagoda-house for the signal man and stoker's residence," and basic fortification.<sup>22</sup> Lieutenant Close was also reportedly responsible for erecting a beacon stand at Signal Hill "to be a warning and guide to mariners" which was lit nightly until the construction of Nobbys Lighthouse.<sup>23</sup> It is possible that Close's beacon replaced that of Lieutenant Skottowe from 1813. In his *Emigrant's Guide*, Henry Dangar describes: "a large coal fire lighted up every evening at sun set, on the point of land near the fort and signal station, simply on the top of a mound a few feet above the surface ... [this] fire consumes about half a ton of coal per night, and gives a large and clear light, which can be seen in fine weather about twenty miles at sea".<sup>24</sup>

The adjacent flagstaff also played a role in harbour navigation, by monitoring ships entering the harbour. Dangar reported that the signals conveyed 'from the fort to the town' were:

- Blue Ensign – a vessel of war
- Yellow Flag – a merchant ship
- Yellow Flag with a Red St. Georges Cross – a brig
- Yellow Flag with a Blue St. Andrews Cross – a schooner
- A Yellow and Blue (perpendicular) Flag – a cutter
- Red Flag – the pilot is on board the vessel coming in.<sup>25</sup>

Work to connect Nobbys Island to the mainland began in 1818. It aimed to connect the island to the mainland through the construction of a causeway; it was to be known as Macquarie Pier in honour of Governor Lachlan Macquarie. The stones used for the causeway's construction were quarried from Signal Hill and transported by small iron-wheeled trucks.<sup>26</sup> Eventually, it was decided that a new

<sup>15</sup> Historical Records of Australia Vol. 4, 612

<sup>16</sup> Historical Records of Australia Vol. 5, vi.

<sup>17</sup> Historical Records of Australia Vol. 4, 636.

<sup>18</sup> Historical Records of Australia Vol 7, 281.

<sup>19</sup> F.M. Bladen, Alexander Britton, and James Cook, "Historical Records of New South Wales. Volume 5," (Sydney: Government Printer, 1897), 368.

<sup>20</sup> Suters Architects and Dawbin Architects, "Fort Scratchley Historic Site: Heritage Management Plan," 2008, 16.

<sup>21</sup> John Bingle, "Past and Present Records of Newcastle, New South Wales," (Newcastle: Bayley, Son, and Harwood, 1873), 5; Henry William Hemsworth Huntington, "Huntington's History of Newcastle and Northern Districts", edited by Ken Shilling (Lambton: Newcastle Family History Society, 2009), 101.

<sup>22</sup> Bingle, Past and Present Records, 15.

<sup>23</sup> Bingle, Past and Present Records, 15.

<sup>24</sup> Henry Dangar, "Index and Directory to Map of the Country Bordering Upon the Hunter River; The Lands of the Australian-Agricultural Company; With The Ground-Plan and Allotments of King's Town, New South Wales," (London: Joseph Cross, 1828), 54 ("Emigrant's Guide").

<sup>25</sup> Dangar, *Emigrant's Guide*, 53.

<sup>26</sup> Godden Mackay, "Fort Scratchley, Newcastle: Conservation Plan," August 1992, 17.



lighthouse would be constructed on Nobbys Head, and work to construct it began in 1857. This would leave the old coal beacon on Signal Hill redundant, and it was last lit on 31 December 1857. The buildings associated with the beacon were later modified by 1860 for use as a dwelling by the Newcastle Harbour Master, Captain David T Allan and his family.<sup>27</sup>

Prior to the completion of Fort Scratchley in the 1880s, Signal Hill continued to carry out navigation functions for ships leaving and entering the port. A new flagstaff for hoisting storm signals was erected in 1869, which was followed by the erection of a new signal mast "on Captain Allen's Hill" in January 1877, on which "the descriptive flags hitherto used on Nobbys" were hoisted.<sup>28</sup> This change was "approved of in shipping circles" largely because Signal Hill "being near town, there will be less difficulty in discerning the class of flags".<sup>29</sup> The Signal Station was temporarily moved to Nobbys Head from 1882 until 1898, moving there permanently in 1914. In 1889, the existing Signal Station was demolished, and the associated northern signal mast used by the harbour pilot was also removed. A new octagonal Signal Station was built next to the parade ground at Fort Scratchley, where it operated from 1898 until the beginning of the First World War. With the removal of the Signal Station in 1914, civilian use of Signal Hill/Fort Scratchley ended.



Figure 5. View of Signal Hill and Nobbys Island, showing flagstaff. (Source: Detail breakwater Macquarie Pier and Nobbys Head Newcastle NSW 1820, [artist unknown]. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, C917-0021b)

<sup>27</sup> Suters, Heritage Management Plan, 17.

<sup>28</sup> "City & District," Newcastle Morning Herald, January 26, 1877, 2; Mort, Fort Scratchley, 9.

<sup>29</sup> "City & District," Newcastle Morning Herald, January 26, 1877, 2.

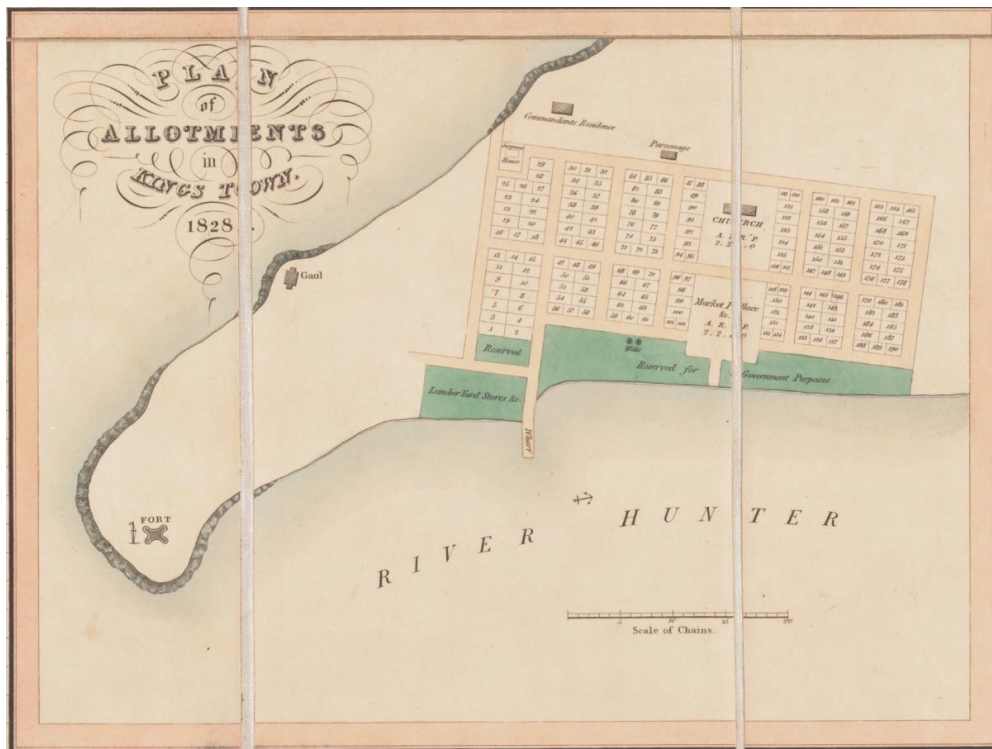


Figure 6. Early plan of Newcastle in 1828, showing a fort and flagstaff at Signal Hill. (Source: Map of the River Hunter, and its branches, 1828, Joseph Cross. National Library of Australia, MAP NK 646)

### 2.3.1. Early fortifications for Newcastle

John Bingle describes an early defence system at Signal Hill that comprised "seven (7) guns placed on the point of the hill, in the shape of an earthen battery...[they] were used for salutes on high days and holidays, King's birthdays, and other rejoicings".<sup>30</sup> The site also came to be known as Fort Fiddlesticks by the convicts due to the perceived ineffectiveness of the fortifications, "and on more than one of those occasions the gunners suffered mutilation in body or limb and it affords them no doubt a lively recollection of the memorable Fort Fiddlestick for the remainder of their days". Henry Dangar includes the early fortifications on his inventory of public buildings, describing it as located on "the extremity of the neck of land commanding the entrance of the harbour, which is capable of being made very strong".<sup>31</sup>

The outbreak of the Crimean War between England and Russia in 1853 presented a threat to the Australian colonies, including NSW, as outposts of the British Empire. The war prompted the selection of sites for defensive purposes in Sydney and somewhat belatedly, in the ports of Newcastle and Wollongong. Authorisation for raising volunteer forces was given in 1854, and in 1855, a volunteer artillery battery was established at Newcastle: the Third Battery Volunteer Artillery.<sup>32</sup> According to local historian W J Goold, "the officer-in-command was Captain Ewan McPherson, son of Major McPherson who had formerly commanded the military establishment at Newcastle ... Samuel Holt was First Lieutenant and the Sergeants were Dr Knaggs, S L Holt, Frederick Ash and John Burrowes".<sup>33</sup> An additional stimulus for raising volunteer forces arrived in 1859 with a revival of Anglo-French tension and news of continued battles in New Zealand.<sup>34</sup> Fear of Russian invasion would continue through until the 1880s, which kept the voluntary forces in Newcastle on their toes.

<sup>30</sup> Bingle, Past and Present Records, 15.

<sup>31</sup> Dangar, Emigrant's Guide, 48.

<sup>32</sup> Godden Mackay, Conservation Plan, 17.

<sup>33</sup> Suters, Heritage Management Plan, 18.

<sup>34</sup> Godden Mackay, Conservation Plan, 18.

Two 6 lb guns were brought to Newcastle for use by the volunteer forces in the 1850s; this artillery was kept at the Military Barracks on Watt Street. The parade ground for volunteer forces in Newcastle was located on the corner of Lake Macquarie Road (now Darby Street) and Parry Street in the present-day suburb of Cooks Hill. The Military Barracks on Watt Street were used for accommodating the volunteer troops, the Imperial forces having vacated. It is known that Signal Hill became increasingly used as the site for exercises by the Newcastle volunteers; in 1861, the northern side of Signal Hill was used as a target for the artillery.<sup>35</sup>

During this time, there was also growing sentiment from the NSW colonists that existing legislation for self-management of the colony, amongst other things, gave insufficient powers to the NSW Legislative Council. A draft constitution was prepared by a Legislative Council Select Committee before receiving royal assent (with amendments) in July 1855. The Constitution Act 1855 introduced a system of responsible government and established many of the constitutional arrangements in place today within NSW, such as the bicameral Parliament comprising the existing Legislative Council and the Legislative Assembly. This, amongst other things, gave the NSW colony self-management of the design and construction of its fortifications. Throughout the early 1860s, the NSW Legislative Assembly's Select Committee of Harbour Defences met to discern the status of the colony's port defences, especially at Newcastle.<sup>36</sup> The Harbour Master David T Allan provided in his testimony that "I may say there are [no guns]...only six guns, and those are not serviceable being all honeycombed with rust...I should not like to fire them." As a result, two 32 lb field guns were mounted at Signal Hill. In 1874, these armaments were supplemented with an additional two 68 lb guns placed on traversing platforms and in May 1878, an additional four 80 lb rifled muzzle loaders (RML) guns were installed at Fort Scratchley.<sup>37</sup>

The last remaining Imperial (British) troops had departed Australian shores in August 1870.<sup>38</sup> Under the Military and Naval Forces Act of NSW 1871, the Government was empowered to raise and maintain permanent naval and military forces in the colony. The NSW Artillery was raised on 1 August 1871, with its headquarters at Dawes Point. In response to the departure of the Imperial troops, a committee was formed to advise the Government on defence from foreign aggression. Following requests from the colonial Governments, Major General Sir William Jervois and Lieutenant Colonel Peter Scratchley were appointed two years later to prepare defence reports. Scratchley, of the Royal Engineers, had previously prepared schemes for Fort Phillip on Observatory Hill in Sydney, and supervised works at Woolwich, Enfield and Shoeburyness in England.<sup>39</sup> Jervois and Scratchley would later undertake a site visit of Signal Hill in May 1877 to determine its suitability as a battery.<sup>40</sup> They proposed a system based on the assumption that Britain could continue to maintain its superior naval capacity. Thus, land defence systems would consist of an enclosed complex with barracks, with a series of guns placed in a battery mounted *en barbette* that would be supplemented with a system of submarine mines or torpedoes with observing and firing stations, thus providing a cost-effective solution to coastal defence. However, this manner of protection was becoming increasingly superseded with the advent of ironclad warships, such as the French Gloire and British HMS Warrior that boasted improved naval firepower. This would later be addressed with modifications starting from 1889. Mr Gustavus A. Morrell, who would later help Barnet with the design and supervision of Bare Island Fort's construction, was entrusted with the final design of the fortifications and buildings under the direction of Jervois.<sup>41</sup>

<sup>35</sup> Graham Wilson and Martin Davies for J. Birmingham, "Fort Scratchley Report, 2. Historical Report," 1979, 8.

<sup>36</sup> Godden Mackay, Conservation Plan, 18.

<sup>37</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 9.

<sup>38</sup> "Imperial Troops," Sydney Morning Herald, July 30, 1870, 5.

<sup>39</sup> Wilson and Davies, Fort Scratchley Report, 10.

<sup>40</sup> Wilson and Davies, Fort Scratchley Report, 11.

<sup>41</sup> Wilson and Davies, Fort Scratchley Report, 11.



## 2.4. Fort Scratchley

### 2.4.1. Construction of Temporary Fortifications

In 1878, it was decided that until William Jervois' recommendations could be carried out, that a temporary battery would be installed on Signal Hill under the supervision of Peter Scratchley.<sup>42</sup> The first structures completed at the temporary battery formed part of the torpedo firing station, located at the end of Queen's Wharf. The works were undertaken by the firm Brooks and Goodsir, with local firm J.A. Rodgers of the Newcastle foundry constructing five torpedo cylinders.<sup>43</sup>

The Newcastle Morning Herald reported that same year that:

*[The] danger of war between England and Russia suggests the consideration of the subject of our defences... Energy in the greatest degree is required, for there is no saying when the threatening European storm will burst over us. Our safety would be the more ensured if the guns intended to act in conjunction with the torpedoes were being placed in position...The Australian colonies offer too valuable a prize, and their weakness in the event of attack is too well known...A recent telegram informed us of the approach of a Russian squadron towards the Pacific, and their operations in the event of war would probably be assisted to a serious extent by privateers equipped in America.*<sup>44</sup>

On 1 April 1878, the Newcastle Morning Herald announced that "Newcastle is to be protected, and the construction of permanent fortifications proceeded with at once...[instructions] have been issued, and, under the superintendence of Mr. Barnett [sic], the Colonial Architect, four large guns have to be mounted and made ready for use, on Captain Allan's Hill".<sup>45</sup> It was proposed that two guns would point seaward and the remaining would overlook the harbour, and during this time, a dispatch of 25 workers would simultaneously begin construction on the permanent fortifications.<sup>46</sup> The existing temporary fortifications would also be supplemented by a detachment of thirty artillerymen, sent from Dawes Point under the command of Lieutenant Le Patourel, to undertake garrison duty of four 80 lb guns placed on temporary platforms.<sup>47</sup> The huts constructed for the artillerymen were completed by June 1878.<sup>48</sup>

By 1878, the temporary fortifications had been completed and consisted of two traverses (defensive barriers or parapets), one of which faced the breakwater and the other placed rearwards facing eastward over the slope of Signal Hill to "protect the gunners working the two northern guns from any splinters that might be the result of an attack from ships at sea".<sup>49</sup> At this time, the plans for the permanent fortifications had also been completed under the supervision of James Barnet, the Colonial Architect.

### 2.4.2. Construction of Permanent Fortifications

While works had already begun in 1878 to construct the permanent fortifications, by 1879, the project faced considerable delays owing to the lack of costings prepared for construction works.<sup>50</sup> Further concerns were raised in May 1881 about the old coal shafts underneath Signal Hill and their impact on the stability of the fortifications above. In order to trace the extent of the old coal shafts, the Examiner of Coal Fields for NSW visited the site, and by 20 May 1881, many of the former shafts were "choked up with debris".<sup>51</sup> Nevertheless, Lieutenant Scratchley determined that "the various tunnels will require thorough and substantial building up in order to safely bear the superincumbent weight".<sup>52</sup> In early October 1881, the four 80 lb guns were removed from on top Signal Hill and lowered into purpose built

<sup>42</sup> "Harbour Defences," Newcastle Morning Herald, March 7, 1878, 2.

<sup>43</sup> "The Torpedo Firing Station," Newcastle Morning Herald, March 27, 1878, 2.

<sup>44</sup> "Our Means of Defence," Newcastle Morning Herald, March 28, 1878, 2.

<sup>45</sup> "Fortifications at Newcastle and the Cablegrams," Newcastle Morning Herald, April 1, 1878, 2.

<sup>46</sup> "Fortifications at Newcastle and the Cablegrams," Newcastle Morning Herald, April 1, 1878, 2; "Fortifications for Newcastle," Newcastle Morning Herald, April 3, 1878, 2.

<sup>47</sup> "The Defence of Newcastle," Newcastle Morning Herald, April 11, 1878, 2; "The Defences of Newcastle," Newcastle Morning Herald, April 12, 1878, 2.

<sup>48</sup> "The Camp on Allan's Hill - Portable Huts," Newcastle Morning Herald, June 28, 1878, 3.

<sup>49</sup> "Progress of Fortifications [sic]," Newcastle Morning Herald, May 1, 1878, 2.

<sup>50</sup> "Defence Works for Newcastle," Newcastle Morning Herald, December 16, 1879, 2.

<sup>51</sup> "The Coal Workings under Flagstaff Hill," Newcastle Morning Herald, May 20, 1881, 2.

<sup>52</sup> "The Newcastle Fortifications," Newcastle Morning Herald, May 24, 1881, 2.



casemates to enable other construction works at the fort to be carried out.<sup>53</sup> By mid-October, the Newcastle Morning Herald reported that:

*The various passages from the battery to the main magazine are all completed, as also the lift through which the shells are received. The battery for the 9-inch guns is awaiting their reception. The look-out post possesses a very finished appearance. Turfing and masonry are being pushed on with all speed, and a gang of men are hard at work, asphaltting the main magazine. An incline is also being made from the battery to the sea.*<sup>54</sup>

On 4 April 1882, the Newcastle Morning Herald announced the completion of the fortification's armament, with "the last of the heavy guns...finally placed in position".<sup>55</sup> By this time, the fort's recognisable design consisting of a semicircular upper level featuring three gun pits and a lower level of tunnels, stores, magazines, casemate battery and a western gun pit were complete. It is of particular note that the walls of fort's magazines and casemate battery are an example of the early use of mass concrete construction, being built "between two and three feet thick" and around five feet thick, respectively.<sup>56</sup> However, while the fortifications themselves had been completed the barracks associated with the fortifications had yet to be built.

Although the relevant designs and plans by James Barnet had been submitted and approved in September 1883, it was not until March 1885 that tenders for the construction of the barracks and Commandant's Cottage had been called. Mr G.A. Smith's tender of £6,990 was recommended for acceptance provided that construction works could be completed in nine months.<sup>57</sup> However, due to Smith's lack of reply to telegrams informing him of his successful tender, the second lowest tender of £7,373 of Mr John Frogley was recommended for acceptance. The recommendation was submitted on 5 May and by 12 May the acceptance had been signed by the Auditor-General, the Crown Solicitor, James Barnet as the Colonial Architect and Mr Frogley.<sup>58</sup>

The barracks complex, comprising the Commandant's Cottage, main barracks, offices, guardhouse, laboratory, and ablutions, took eleven months to build and were completed in April 1886. These main buildings were built from brick and rendered on the exterior to imitate sandstone blocks set to a coarse ashlar bond, with wooden floors, concrete and cement rendered walls, and a timber framed corrugated iron roof. The buildings surrounding the barrack's courtyard were also surrounded by an eight foot wide sandstone paved verandah supported by cast iron columns. The officers' quarters faced northeast, and the NCOs' (non-commissioned officers) kitchen was on the east with their quarters to the west. The laboratory situated in the south-east corner behind the armoury was used for packing shells. Toilet blocks were located in the southeast and southwest corners of the lower apron of the inner fort.<sup>59</sup> At the same time, works were undertaken to construct the fort's independent underground water system, which consisted of a system of eight tanks. Situated underground between the barracks and the guardhouse is the largest tank which could hold around 42,000 gallons.

In 1887, a recommendation by Major General H. Schaw to further upgrade NSW defences included the laying of torpedo launches and the construction of a new emplacement for one of the two 8 inch BL guns that were transported to Newcastle in March of that year.<sup>60</sup> The other gun would be sited at Shepherds Hill (future site of the Shepherds Hill Defence Group Military Installations) due to its position over waters "hidden from the guns in the fort [Scratchley]" as well as water to the south.<sup>61</sup> Further upgrades to Fort Scratchley would follow in the coming years due to advances in military technology and the expenses associated with casemate battery construction.

<sup>53</sup> "The Fortifications," Newcastle Morning Herald, October 10, 1881, 2.

<sup>54</sup> "The Fortifications," Newcastle Morning Herald, October 13, 1881, 2.

<sup>55</sup> "Completion of the Fortifications Armament," Newcastle Morning Herald, April 4, 1882.

<sup>56</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 12.

<sup>57</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 12.

<sup>58</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 13.

<sup>59</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 13.

<sup>60</sup> Major-General Commanding John Richardson, "Military Forces of the Colony (Annual Report for 1886)," (Report, March 1887), 4; Major-General H. Schaw, "Defences of New South Wales," (Report, August 1887), 6-7.

<sup>61</sup> Schaw, Defences of New South Wales, 7.



Figure 7. Detail of 1881 plan of Newcastle showing Signal Hill and fortifications. (Source: Australia, East coast, New South Wales : Newcastle Harbour / from surveys by F.W. Sidney and Officers of the Harbours and Rivers Department to 1881 ; engraved by Davies & Company. National Library of Australia, MAP RM 2989)



Figure 8. Detail from 1887 harbourmasters plan of Newcastle, showing Fort Scratchley. (Source: Plan of the Port of Newcastle : reduced from recent surveys by officers of the Harbours & Rivers Department / outer soundings by Captn. F.W. Sidney, R.N. National Library of Australia, MAP RM 1588)

### 2.4.3. Later modifications to Fort Scratchley

The late Nineteenth century saw rapid advances in military technology, especially in Europe. By the 1880s, casemate batteries had become expensive to construct, and moreover they offered inadequate protection to gun crews. In 1889, it was decided to rearm Fort Scratchley with more modern weapons in order to bring it into line with European standards.

In February 1889, a tender by James Russell was accepted to extensively remodel the existing gun pits, and to build a new gun pit immediately to the east of the casemate battery. According to military historian Richard Mort, "the pits were deepened to nine feet eight inches, a casemated section to the rear of each gun was provided for the gun-crew, and new shell recesses and arms stores were constructed...most of the lower level was not altered and existing shell-lifts were used".<sup>62</sup> Works on perimeter fortifications such as the 170 foot long loopholed brick and concrete wall and gates beside the dry ditch were completed during this time. A tram from Parnell Place (old Goal Hill) was used to transport the building materials to and from the site, including 14,000 tons of Melbourne blue metal used in the concrete works.<sup>63</sup>

Four new disappearing guns were installed at this time: one 8 inch breech loading (BL) and three 6 inch BL guns, all on an eastern arc. The three 6 inch BL guns on disappearing mountings replaced the three 9 inch RML guns. Using a hydro-pneumatic system, the 6 inch disappearing guns could be aimed and loaded below parapet level; a valve would release and the gun would rise above the parapet, the gun would fire, and then be forced back down by the recoil. A single 8 inch BL disappearing gun was later added to the north of these emplacements. These modification works were completed in December 1892 although minor alterations to the layout of the area around the battery continued throughout the 1890s.

Newcastle's harbour defences were boosted in 1889, with the laying of 20 submarine mines along the entrance to the harbour on the bottom of the harbour channel. A below ground mine remote control emplacement was established at the western end of the dry ditch overlooking the harbour. An electrical link was laid so that detonation could be set off from either the fort or the pilot station at the base of the hill. Newcastle's torpedo defence system was manned by the Submarine Miners.

In 1892-93, the range finding and gun captain's positions were changed from their original location between the gun pits. The two new positions were constructed in the left and right flanks of the disappearing guns. A third position for fire commander was built to the rear of the parade ground overlooking the centre of the gun battery. These positions were all exposed and provided little cover from the elements or from the rear.

In 1894-95, these positions were rebuilt in an expanded form with wrought iron roofs and shutters. Depression range finders were also installed allowing the range and bearing of incoming ships to be accurately gauged. During this period, two 1.5 inch Nordenfelt quick-firing machine guns were installed, one above the casemate at Fort Scratchley and the other at Torpedo Point. It was believed that with the development of small fast boats, the 80 lb guns could not be fired rapidly enough.

---

<sup>62</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 13.

<sup>63</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 13.





## FORT SCRATCHLEY.

Figure 9. Sketch of Fort Scratchley in the Newcastle Morning Herald. (Source: Newcastle Morning Herald, 22 December 1894, accessed January 2024)

Fort Scratchley was described in detail in the Newcastle Morning Herald on 22 December 1894:

*The port of Newcastle is well defended, and it is right that it should be, as it is the chief coaling station in the Southern Hemisphere. With an enemy in possession here, co-operating with a naval squadron, very serious damage might be done in these seas to British shipping. As will be seen from the sketch, the chief fortification of Newcastle has an imposing appearance, it being built on a natural elevation of considerable height. The fort was built in compliance with the recommendations of the late Sir Peter Scratchley with regard to a general system of coast defence. In the early days the hill was undermined by the extraction of the coal seams underneath it, so that when forming the port it was found necessary to fill up the denuded strata by means of rubble and cement. From the hill a complete system of submarine mines protecting the entrance of the port can be directed and controlled. The artillery armament is on a considerable scale, and includes three six-inch breech loading rifled guns with hydro-pneumatic elevating carriages, while another eight-inch gun of a similar type will shortly be replaced in position. The magazine arrangements and equipment are also on a large scale. Here is stationed a detachment of Permanent Artillery, while the companies of local volunteer artillery are practiced all year round in everything connected with the handling and use of big guns. On the hill is the signal station for the port, and flags are generally seen flying all day long intimating the sighting of vessels. Around the hill a road has been cut, which forms a pleasant carriage drive.<sup>64</sup>*

In 1891, Newcastle's fortifications were augmented when a battery was constructed at Shepherds Hill, armed with an 8 inch BL disappearing gun (one of two supplied in 1887, the other being located at Fort Scratchley).

In 1898, the three 80 lb RML casemated guns were removed and replaced with three 1.5 inch Nordenfelt quick-firing guns. Two five-barrel Nordenfelt 45 mm machine guns were also added to the fort's armaments for land defence. The Nordenfelt guns replaced the 80 lb RML guns in the casemate.

<sup>64</sup> Newcastle Morning Herald, 22 December 1894

Passageways behind the gun emplacements on the upper level were covered forming the upper level tunnel.<sup>65</sup> In August of the same year, a new 8 inch BL Armstrong gun was also mounted at Fort Scratchley. The mounting of this gun was supervised by Captain Augustus G. H. Morris of the Permanent Artillery. Thirty artillerymen were required to move it from the roadway to the southeastern face of the fort and then to lift it over the parapet. The new gun reportedly weighed 12 tons, was "20ft long, and of a modern type, and was capable of throwing a projectile weighing 150lb".<sup>66</sup>



Figure 10. Group at Fort Scratchley, Empire Day 1890. (Source: After salute at Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, NSW, 24 May 1890. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, ASGN0586-B24)

<sup>65</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 13

<sup>66</sup> "The New Eight-Inch Gun," Newcastle Morning Herald, August 16, 1898, 5.



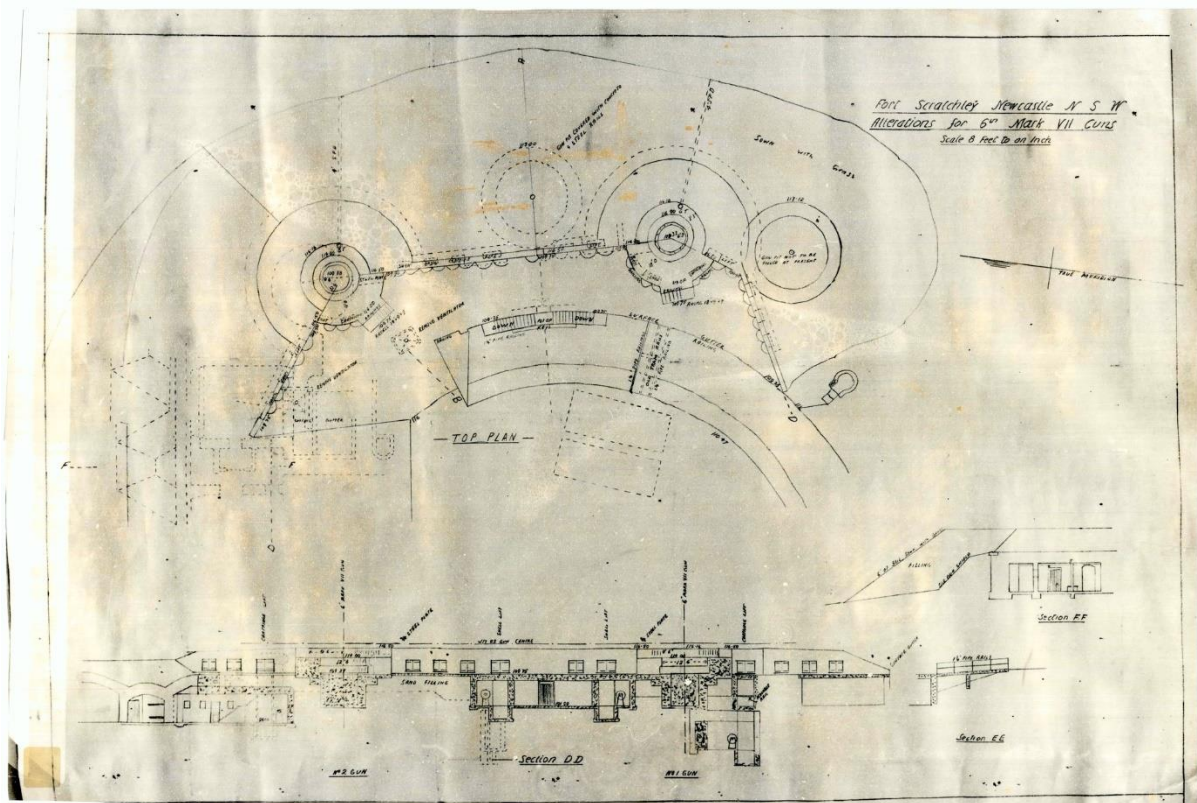


Figure 11. Plans showing alterations to eastern arc gun battery for the installation of 6 inch Mk VII guns. (Source: Fort Scratchley : alterations for 6" Mark VII Guns, [nd], [author unknown]. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, M2995)

## 2.5. Fort Scratchley in the 20th century

With Federation in 1901, the former Colonial armed forces were amalgamated to form the new Australian Army. When the newly formed Federal Government of Australia took control of NSW defences, armaments were standardised, which created an opportunity to replace obsolete equipment. At Fort Scratchley, the single remaining 80 lb RML gun *en barbette* immediately adjoining the casemate battery was considered obsolete and was eventually removed in 1907.<sup>67</sup>

As a result of further improvements in military technology such as the increasingly faster speeds that ships travelled at, slower firing guns, like the disappearing guns at Fort Scratchley which fired approximately one round a minute, had become obsolete. Gunners also experienced difficulties with the hydro-pneumatic elevating systems installed for some of the guns, which resulted in the replacement of the disappearing guns with two 6 inch Mk VII BL guns in 1911. The Mk VII BL Guns were capable of firing up to eight rounds a minute, a stark difference to the earlier disappearing type guns. To facilitate the installation of these new models, major alterations were made to the eastern arc of the fort. The gun pit for the 8 inch gun was filled in to accommodate the new gun while the northern 6 inch gun pit was lowered 18 inches and covered with reinforced concrete to provide a shell store for the new guns. The emplacement for the second 6 inch Mk VII was constructed between the central and northern disappearing gun pits, with new shell and armoury stores built around the guns as necessary. A new access to the existing tunnel complex was provided by stairs between the guns.<sup>68</sup>

The same year, an observation post and signal tower were constructed, and the Nordenfolt gun was removed from the eastern end of the casemate battery to convert the emplacement to a brick magazine

<sup>67</sup> "Obsolete Guns," Evening News, August 15, 1907, 3.

<sup>68</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 14.

area. The two remaining disappearing guns appear to have been retained until the late 1930s before they were dismounted and returned to Sydney.<sup>69</sup>

A further augmentation of Newcastle's outer line of defence came with the construction of Fort Wallace, near Stockton, in 1912/13, which was armed with two 6 inch MK VII guns.<sup>70</sup> The following year, the Signal Station moved to Nobbys Head permanently. The First World War broke out in 1914 and ended in 1918; Fort Scratchley did not see any action during the war years. However, during this time, Fort Scratchley was occupied by the 3rd Australian Garrison Artillery and the 39th Fortress Company of the Royal Australian Engineers (RAE). Established in 1910, the 39th Fortress Company was responsible for operating the searchlights at the fort.<sup>71</sup> In 1929, Captain Klein of the Staff Corps announced a new defence proposal under the "voluntarily enlisted scheme, as they affected the Newcastle fortress units".<sup>72</sup> In addition to the permanent Royal Australian Artillery Garrison stationed at the fort, this proposal would create a volunteer resident militia, known as the 13th Heavy Battery of the Australian Garrison Artillery, who were responsible for operating the fort's equipment. Soldiers from the unit occupied the barracks at the fort.<sup>73</sup>

In 1939, Major P. W. Dobson became Fortress Commander at Newcastle, succeeding Lieutenant-Colonel L. E. S. Barker, and Captain Richard Selwyn Mort was promoted to Commanding Officer of the 113 Heavy Battery RAA; he had joined the unit in 1924. Mort's long-term and close association with the fort enabled him to write a definitive history of Fort Scratchley in his retirement.<sup>74</sup>

Fort Scratchley underwent few changes prior to the onset of the Second World War. Changes that were made include an extension to the observation post in 1939 to add an extra height of seven feet for allowing better observation of the bay and modifications to the blast walls of the battery.<sup>75</sup> In May 1940, a new recreation/dance hall was opened at the fort, which was celebrated with a dance 'attended by many members of the heavy artillery, fortress engineers and 2nd Garrison Battalion'. During the 1940s, two further additions were made in the courtyard area: a Rations Block was erected between the western guard house and bathrooms, and a searchlight directing station was built in the south-eastern corner, to control the three fight lights for the fort.<sup>76</sup>

Although Fort Scratchley itself underwent little change in this period, prior to the war, the overall arrangement of Newcastle's coastal defence was modified. The forward line of defence was to be held by 9.2 inch guns which were installed at many places around the coast, including the nearby Fort Wallace. There, two 9.2 inch guns replaced the Mk VII guns installed in 1912/13. These guns had a range of approximately 30,000 yards and were to be used as long range counter-bombardment in conjunction with the close range defence capabilities of Fort Scratchley's armaments.<sup>77</sup> This would be further modified with the addition of two Anti Motor Torpedo-Boat sections constructed at North Stockton and one on the southern breakwater. They each consisted of two 3 lb quick-firing emplacements and an observation post. In 1944, the southern breakwater section was replaced by a more modern 6 lb twin-barrel quick-firing emplacement located under Nobbys for protection of the harbour entrance against small enemy surface craft.<sup>78</sup>

On the evening of 7-8 June 1942, Fort Scratchley saw its first and only hostile action when a Japanese submarine, the I-21 commanded by Captain Kanji Matsumura, shelled Newcastle.<sup>79</sup> The guns used to fire at the Japanese submarine were the 6 inch Mk VII BL guns installed in 1911. Major Watson, then Battery Commander at Fort Scratchley, recalled the attack forty years later, in 1982:

---

<sup>69</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 14.

<sup>70</sup> "Stockton Fort. Installation of the guns," Newcastle Morning Herald, September 20, 1913, 6; Mort, Fort Scratchley, 14.

<sup>71</sup> "The Volunteers," Newcastle Morning Herald, December 4, 1929, 12.

<sup>72</sup> "Volunteers," Newcastle Morning Herald, November 30, 1929, 4.

<sup>73</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 27.

<sup>74</sup> "Major Dobson Fortress Commander," Newcastle Morning Herald, October 10, 1939, 17.

<sup>75</sup> Wilson and Davies, Fort Scratchley Report, 18.

<sup>76</sup> Newcastle Morning Herald, 16 May 1940.

<sup>77</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 15.

<sup>78</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 15.

<sup>79</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 24.

*Before I had gone to sleep I heard the alarm bells. I cursed a little and concluded that some clown had accidentally triggered the alarm system. Then I heard gunfire. It wasn't our own. I raced out of bed, pulled on a dressing gown and slippers and ran to the OP (operations room). I raised the battery alarm and then I saw a star-shell over Stockton Bight and directed staff to observe the position closely. Bombardier Curry reported a gun flash and I ordered the guns to lock on the bearing. ...Unfortunately one gun reported a misfire (it turned out later that a tube had been bent). The first gun fired, the second one corrected the fault, and fired immediately after. During this time, there was one round from the submarine and I heard it going past making a peculiar whizzing sound. I screamed "duck" to the OP personnel as we felt the round going past the OP.<sup>80</sup>*

According to Watson, only seven live rounds were fired from the Japanese submarine, of which four were "duds". One of these unexploded shells landed in the BHP steelworks.<sup>81</sup>

Bombardier Stanley Newton was reportedly the only man injured in the attack. On approaching Fort Scratchley, Newton:

*noted that most shells were not exploding. He presumed they were duds, and undaunted, continued on. As he did so, a shell landed on the road, bounced, and spun towards the hard concrete kerb. With second thoughts about its being a dud, he momentarily froze, and then headed for cover in a doorway. The shell exploded, hurling Bombardier Newton through the air and stunning him. He awoke to greet a surprised air-raid warden. Feeling quite fit, and unaware of a piece of shrapnel lodged in his forehead, he ran onto the Fort to take his position.<sup>82</sup>*

Fort Scratchley accepted its first intake of female officers and other ranks from the Australian Women's Army Service (AWAS) which was formed in August 1941. They were accommodated at Nobbys and in two huts outside the perimeter walls of the fort. The AWAS were responsible for observing the radar at Nobbys and for undertaking communications duties and plotting room work at Fort Scratchley.<sup>83</sup> Other Army units stationed at the fort during the war included the 113 Heavy Battery, 39th Fortress Company and the 2nd Garrison Battalion.



Figure 12. View looking towards Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, NSW, [1900s], [photographer unknown]. (Source: University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, A9011(via))

<sup>80</sup> "Memories of shelling dominate opening for Fort museum," Newcastle Morning Herald, April 5, 1982, 11.

<sup>81</sup> "Memories of shelling dominate opening for Fort museum," Newcastle Morning Herald, April 5, 1982, 11.

<sup>82</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 27.

<sup>83</sup> "History: Gun force on duty," Newcastle Herald, October 7, 2016, <https://www.newcastleherald.com.au/story/4205738/history-gun-force-on-duty/>.



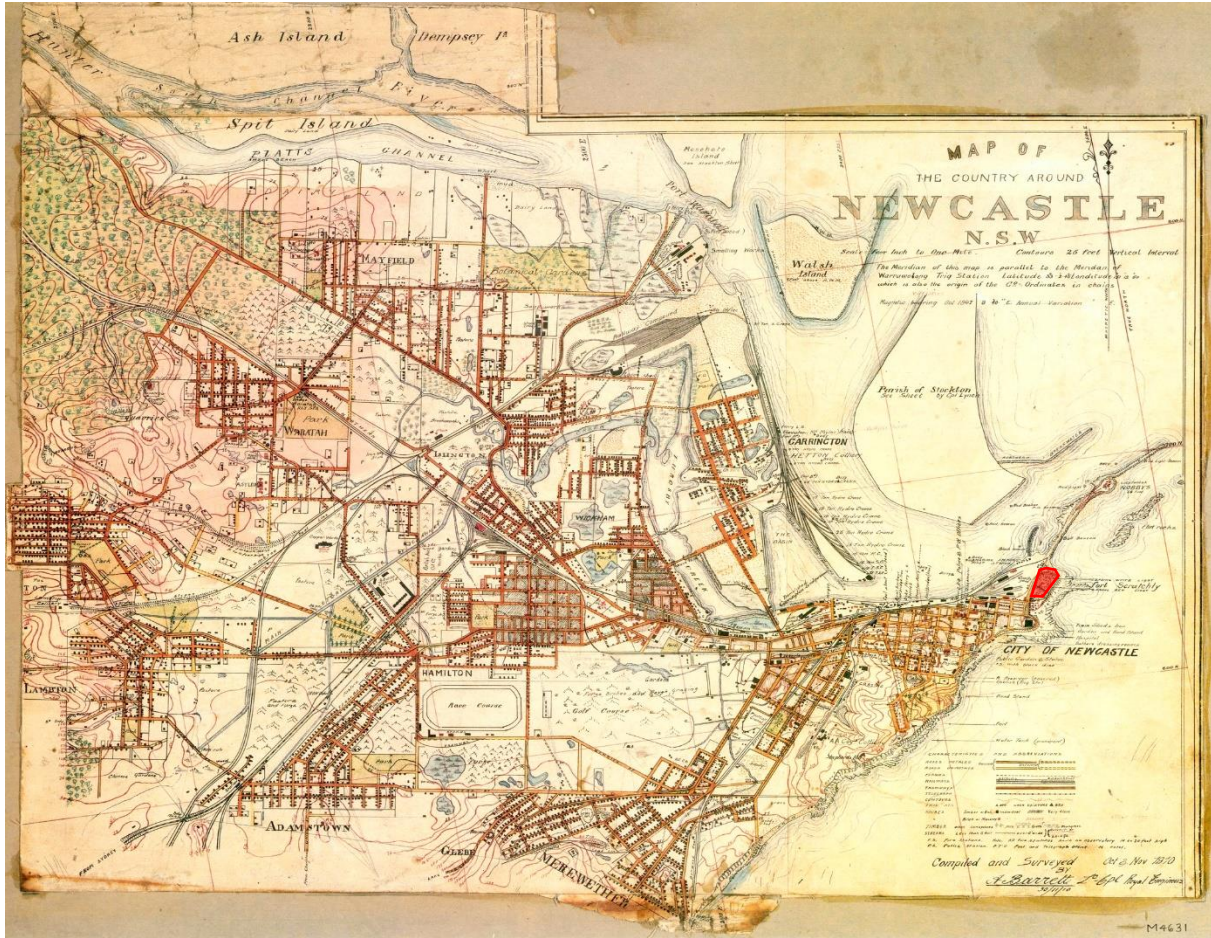


Figure 13. Map of the Country around Newcastle, NSW, 30 November 1910, surveyed by Lc Cpl A. Barrett, Royal Engineers. Subject site allotment is shaded red. (Source: University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, M4631)



Figure 14. Aerial view of Fort Scratchley, showing additional WWII structures since demolished. (Source: Aerial photograph of Fort Scratchley with camouflage, Newcastle, NSW, 1 December 1942, R.A.A.F. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, FNC\_402\_02)



Figure 15. One of the 14cm unexploded shells fired during the I-24 Japanese attack on Newcastle. (Source: Unexploded shell from I-24 submarine attack, Newcastle, NSW, [1942], [photographer unknown]. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, P0590)



## 2.6. Fort Scratchley after WWII: 1945-1972

Immediately following the Second World War, the number of permanent troops based at Fort Scratchley was dramatically reduced because "all non-permanent troops were demobilised" from the armed services and the Fort reverted to a peace-time basis.<sup>84</sup> A skeleton crew of around 30 personnel based at the fort from 1946 to 1952 "performed essential duties of returning warlike stores to Ordnance Depots and maintaining the guns, instruments etc."; the battery was called the 2 Coastal Artillery Battery Newcastle in this period.<sup>85</sup>

At the close of the war, Italian prisoners of war (POWs) were accommodated at Fort Scratchley for up to two years from 1945, until they were repatriated.<sup>86</sup>

In October 1951, 'a small brass cannon and two larger cannon [sic], believed to be the original guns installed at Fort Scratchley, were lifted from the fort moat ...and sent to Sydney" where they were intended to be installed as ornamentation for the Army Barracks at Georges Heights. When rediscovered in 1951, the small bronze cannon (then believed to date from 1798) was assumed to have "been put in place at least no later than the regime of Commandant Wallace, long before 1820".<sup>87</sup> However, it has since emerged that this account contains several errors and that the cannons in the news article refer to a small iron smoothbore muzzle loading 4 lb 11 cwt gun and two larger smoothbore muzzle loading bronze 12 lb 6 cwt howitzer guns. It is also believed that the date found on one of the larger cannons "11/3/19" was mistakenly interpreted to be a date rather than a gun weight. However, this has allowed the cannons to be tracked to Puckapunyal Army Barracks, Victoria.<sup>88</sup>

The National Service Scheme was reinstated in 1951 by the Menzies Government, and in May of the following year, "the nucleus of a unit to man the Fort was established".<sup>89</sup> Fort Scratchley was used by the National Service Scheme for militia training. The unit, the 13th Medium Coast Battery RAA, was commanded by Major Richard Selwyn Mort, being appointed from the Reserve of Officers. The battery was renamed the 113th Medium Coast Battery RAA from 1956 to 1960, and as the 113th Coast Battery RAA from 1960 to 1962.<sup>90</sup>

With advances in military technology from the late 1950s onwards, particularly relating to aircraft and the rise in mobile warfare during the Second World War, fixed coastal defences such as Fort Scratchley were considered obsolete.<sup>91</sup> By 1962, coastal artillery at Fort Scratchley was abandoned, and the fort became the base of the 113 Light Anti-Aircraft Battery RAA, until it moved to Adamstown in November 1972. During this time, the base was equipped with 40 mm Bofors guns. The remaining 6 inch Mk VII guns at the fort, which had been the only two coastal guns in NSW used in combat during the Second World War, were fired for the last time in night target practice in March 1962.<sup>92</sup> Carl Christie (Commander at Fort Scratchley from 1960 to 1972) recounts that while the fort was used as a depot for the 113 Light Anti-Aircraft Battery RAA, the inner part of the fortifications were not used by the Army in this period.<sup>93</sup> The guns were primarily used for training, and the buildings for administration. Army camps continued at the site until the 1972 when the Battery moved to Bullecourt Barracks in the nearby suburb of Adamstown.

Concerns were raised about the fate of the 6 inch Mk VII guns following the final practice using them in March 1962. Mort writes that "lengthy discussions took place at Federal, State and Local Government levels regarding [their] ultimate disposal...conversion to scrap".<sup>94</sup> However, then Lord Mayor, Alderman Frank Purdue CBE said in the Newcastle Morning Herald of 18 September 1963 that "as these were the only two coastal guns in New South Wales ever to be used in combat, I feel that they should be preserved."<sup>95</sup> In response, the City of Newcastle Council allocated £800 the following year from the

<sup>84</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 31.

<sup>85</sup> Carl Christie, December 2007, personal communication quoted in Suters, Heritage Management Plan, 26; Mort, Fort Scratchley, 18, 31.

<sup>86</sup> "Nobbys Italians Are Not So Happy," Newcastle Morning Herald, September 28, 1946, 5.

<sup>87</sup> "Historic Cannon Removed from Fort Scratchley," Newcastle Morning Herald, October 17, 1951, 1.

<sup>88</sup> Royal Australian Artillery Historical Company, Artillery Register, accessed January 23, 2024, <https://ehive.com/collections/203126/objects/1799629/sbml-4-pdr-11cwt-gun-on-wooden-naval-carriage-au-vic-puckapunyal>.

<sup>89</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 31.

<sup>90</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 31.

<sup>91</sup> Paul Hirst, "The Defence of Places: Fortifications as Architecture [part 2]," AA Files, no. 34 (Autumn 1997): 12.

<sup>92</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 15, 31.

<sup>93</sup> Carl Christie, December 2007, personal communication quoted in Suters, Heritage Management Plan, 26.

<sup>94</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 15, 31.

<sup>95</sup> Newcastle Morning Herald, September 18, 1963, quoted in Mort, Fort Scratchley, 31.

King Edward Park Improvement Fund to move the two relics to Obelisk Hill. These guns were later returned to Fort Scratchley in 1978, and were later placed on pedestals relocated from Georges Heights.<sup>96</sup> The work was carried out by the Department of Housing and Construction with approval of the Australian Heritage Commission. Transport was provided from Sydney by Army low loader. This was the first step towards conservation of the Mk VII guns which were later restored to working order by members of the Fort Scratchley Historical Society.



Figure 16. Servicemen checking gun shells, Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, 1952, [photographer unknown]. (Source: Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 163 001668)



Figure 17. Service people marching at Fort Scratchley, 21 September 1959, Newcastle Morning Herald. (Source: Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 104 012631)



Figure 18. Returning the 6 inch Mk VII guns to Fort Scratchley, c. 1978. (Source: Fort Scratchley Historical Society, accessed January 2024)



Figure 19. Preparations for mounting the Mk VII guns on pedestals obtained from Georges Heights, c. early 1980s. (Source: Fort Scratchley Historical Society, accessed January 2024)

<sup>96</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 33; Fort Scratchley Historical Society, accessed January 23, 2024, <https://www.facebook.com/1685317225035258/posts/fort-scratchleys-6-inch-guns-were-returned-to-the-fort-in-1978-1-4-5-while-still/2755770494656587/>.

## 2.7. Fort Scratchley: conservation and reconstruction 1972-2004

Following the 113 Light Anti-Aircraft Battery's move to Adamstown in 1972, the Fort Scratchley site remained vacant until restoration works commenced in 1974. However, the building and tunnel structures at Fort Scratchley suffered considerable damage after the Army vacancy due to vandalism and corrosion, as well as deterioration due to pigeon's nesting at the site. It was reported that "plumbing, light fittings, and switch-boxes in barracks buildings, and tunnels were destroyed or stolen, doors and oil-lamp recesses were removed or damaged, and in the Commandant's quarters large sections of flooring were demolished.<sup>97</sup> In 1974, two initial grants of \$60,000 were given each by the Federal Government to reconstruct the main buildings in the inner fort area, and have been supplemented with further grants over the years to assist with the fort's reconstruction and operations.

In 1978 the City of Newcastle Council accepted the terms of a lease agreement with the Department of Administrative Services to use Fort Scratchley allotment, following considerable debate and negotiation between the Council, local community, and the State and Federal Governments. The Commonwealth Government agreed to accept responsibility for upgrading the site and handing it over to the Council.<sup>98</sup> Further conservation works were carried out by the Commonwealth Department of Housing and Construction, beginning with works to secure the site, tunnels and barracks. Following these works, the Newcastle Maritime Museum became the new tenants, occupying the NCOs' Quarters, Canteen and Barracks buildings. In October the same year, the fort became the site for a community theatre project which interpreted the 1942 attack on Newcastle, titled "Shooting at Fort Scratchley". From around 1981 to the mid 1990s, the Hunter Valley Theatre staged a range of children's theatre productions at the fort; similarly the local Zeal and Footloose Theatres wrote and performed plays at Fort Scratchley which explored the history of Newcastle.<sup>99</sup>

In 1978, Fort Scratchley was placed on the Register of the National Estate. From this time, restoration works were undertaken in earnest (although preliminary reconstruction works had begun four years earlier in 1974) and continued for the next six years. Works between 1974 and 1984 included the:

- reconstruction of the front gates;
- re-roofing of the above-ground barracks buildings;
- installation of new lighting in the tunnels;
- relocation of pedestals;
- sealing the surface of the parade ground;
- reconstruction of the flagstaff;
- restoration of the Battery Observation Post;
- hoists and tunnel upgrade; and
- upgrading of services throughout the site.

The volunteer-run Fort Scratchley Military Museum Society, later known as the Fort Scratchley Historical Society, was established by the end of January 1982. The seeds of this idea were formed during Heritage Week in March 1981 when the Commonwealth's project architect Bruce Dawbin organised a "display of photographs, documents, plans and a few artefacts" at Fort Scratchley.<sup>100</sup> A steering committee was formed to establish a military museum at the site in May 1981. Early members of the society included several retired officers formerly stationed at the Fort including Lt Colonel Richard Selwyn Mort, Sergeant Stan Newton, Carl Christie, Gunner Bill Rolfe, and Melissa Cameron of the AWAS. The first president was Ernest Boulton.

Fort Scratchley celebrated its centenary on 3 April 1982, which was marked by an open day and the official opening of the new military museum by Major-General John Whitelaw AO CBE. The museum, which included a "display of artefacts, with a selection of photographs and documents, occupy one

<sup>97</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 32.

<sup>98</sup> "Tourists now storm historic fort," The Dominion Post, June, 1999, 17.

<sup>99</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 35; "Redeployed! Using Fort Scratchley - the story of a location in transition," Multimedia, Fort Scratchley Historical Society, accessed January 23, 2024, <https://www.fortscratchley.org.au/multimedia/>.

<sup>100</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 35.



large and one small room in the quarters, while another room is devoted to a display of photos, uniforms, documents and artefacts connected with the women's services".<sup>101</sup>

The museum consolidated its collection in the Commandants Cottage for the next 22 years and continued to conduct tours through the tunnels which were a major attraction for the site. The former Artillery Store was converted into a museum shop, ticket office and information post for the tunnels. In 1983, the Newcastle Marine Archaeological Museum established a workshop and research centre in the former Gunners' and NCOs' bathroom and wash house, and occupied the site until the mid 1990s.<sup>102</sup> In the early 1980s a full time curator was appointed at the Newcastle Maritime Museum, initially George Imashev, who was succeeded by Richard Morgan.

An extensive conservation and refurbishment program was carried out from 1978 to 1984 by the staff of the Department of Housing and Construction (formerly Commonwealth Department of Works) at the Adamstown Area Office and Works Depot. Under the direction of Area Manager Greg Radecki and coordinated by project architect Bruce Dawbin, all trades were provided by the Works Depot. (The Works Depot had only recently relocated in 1976 from the SES site, below the Fort). Bill Cook and his joinery team provided all joinery for the Commandant's Cottage restoration, the gates reconstruction, tunnels, armouries and the flagstaff reconstruction. Specialist work included the cast iron columns and bollards by Goninans, Newcastle and the replica copper lamps at the gate pillars, which were custom made in Sydney. Conservation works were carried out over the entire site, funded by an annual budget of around \$60,000 for the Department of Administrative Services over the 6 year period.

By the mid-1996, local residents began lobbying for the removal of squatters from the disused site.<sup>103</sup> A building on the premises, damaged in both the Newcastle earthquake and a prior fire in June 1996, was eventually demolished after suffering another fire. Vandalism concerns also escalated among residents leading up to the transfer of ownership to the City of Newcastle Council.<sup>104</sup>

In 2004, the Federal Government decided to close Fort Scratchley to the public and allocated an eventual sum of approximately \$8.5 million towards conservation and reconstruction efforts.<sup>105</sup> The Newcastle Maritime Museum and the Fort Scratchley Historical Society were relocated to alternative sites within Newcastle. The extensive works on the fort included new infrastructure, structural repairs, tunnel refurbishments with roof waterproofing, metals conservation, enhanced site access, replacement of the transport garage, and the construction of a new Multi-Purpose Centre. Fort Scratchley reopened its doors in 2008 after the ownership transition from the Commonwealth Government to the City of Newcastle Council. The Fort Scratchley Historical Society has resumed its involvement in the day-to-day management of visitors, access to Fort experiences, displays, and certain curatorial activities, and in 2021, a Memorandum of Understanding between the City Council and the Fort Scratchley Historical Society was established to help guide the management and operation of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site.

During the period of Fort Scratchley's temporary closure in 2005, a surveying project was undertaken by Monteath & Powys partnered with the (then) Coal River Working Group to identify and map the original convict coal mine entrances (or drifts) underneath Fort Scratchley. Three locations were marked with yellow nails on the footpath opposite entrances on Fort Drive and were chalked to provide interpretation to visitors about the early convict history of the Coal River Precinct and Newcastle more broadly (see Figure 21).

In 1992, a CMP was prepared for the site by the heritage firm Godden Mackay. This plan underwent revision in 2008, transforming into the Heritage Management Plan prepared by Suturs Architects in association with Dawbin Architects. In recognition of their work on the Fort Scratchley Historic Site, Suturs Architects received the Conservation: Built Heritage award for a Project over \$1M at the 2009 National Trust Awards.

---

<sup>101</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 35.

<sup>102</sup> Mort, Fort Scratchley, 35.

<sup>103</sup> Commonwealth Fire Board Annual Report 1996- 1997, 'Major and Significant Fires Australian Property Group', 11.

<sup>104</sup> "Council pushes to stop Fort Scratchley vandalism," ABC News, March 28, 2007, accessed January 23, 2024, [https://www.abc.net.au/news/2007-03-28/council-pushes-to-stop-fort-scratchley-vandalism/2228028?utm\\_campaign=abc\\_news\\_web&utm\\_content=link&utm\\_medium=content\\_shared&utm\\_source=abc\\_news\\_web](https://www.abc.net.au/news/2007-03-28/council-pushes-to-stop-fort-scratchley-vandalism/2228028?utm_campaign=abc_news_web&utm_content=link&utm_medium=content_shared&utm_source=abc_news_web).

<sup>105</sup> John Howard, "Fort Scratchley," (2007), accessed January 24, 2024, <https://pmtranscripts.pmc.gov.au/release/transcript-15489>.



Figure 20. Handing over Fort Scratchley to City Council, 20 May 1977. (Source: Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 104 009457)



Figure 21. Chalked coal mine entrance (drift) beneath Fort Scratchley. These markings have since been washed away. (Source: University of Newcastle Library Special Collections, News, Opening of Coal River Precinct: Interpretations Exhibit, accessed March 2024)

## 2.8. Summary Timeline

Year	Description
Pre-European Settlement	<p>The coastal headland area surrounding Signal Hill, 'Tahlbinh', supported an abundance of subsistence resources in the area including fish, shellfish, crustacean as well as mammals, birds and reptiles. The coastal landscape also provided a variety of material resources such as stone, iron, and timber.</p> <p>The area around Signal Hill evidences an Aboriginal economy prior to European settlement due to the presence of shell middens, grinding areas, clay digs and stone tools.</p>
1788	Permanent European settlement established at Sydney Cove.
1797	Lieutenant John Shortland discovers the entrance to the Hunter River on 9 September. The harbour and river are named Coal Harbour and Coal River, due to abundant surface coal deposits found in the area.
1801	First attempt to establish a European settlement at present day Newcastle. Signal Hill/Fort Scratchley is known as Colliers Point at this time.
1802	The settlement at Coal Harbour/Coal River fails and convicts and soldiers are recalled to Sydney.
1804	Second attempt to establish a permanent settlement at Newcastle in April, in direct response to a convict uprising at Vinegar Hill the month before. The settlement, established as a site of secondary punishment for re-offending convicts, is originally named King's Town but later renamed Newcastle.
1813	Coal beacon and flag staff to aid harbour navigation are erected on Signal Hill; the flagstaff is recorded in 1819 as "a small stone tower with Lighthouse".
1817	Coal Mining at Signal Hill ceases.
1818	Construction begins on a pier to connect Nobbys Island to the mainland at the base of Signal Hill; it is named Macquarie Pier for Governor Lachlan Macquarie.
1822	Newcastle is abandoned as a site of secondary punishment and opened up to free settlers. In this year, engineer Lieutenant Close oversees construction of a pagoda-style structure on Signal Hill. Lt. Close also oversees a basic earthen battery armed with seven guns, unofficially called Fort Fiddlesticks because of its perceived ineffectiveness.
1836	An eight lamp lighthouse is built on the site; Fort Fiddlesticks is still operational at this time.
1853	Outbreak of the Crimean War between England and Russia.
1855	Organisation of volunteer forces in NSW; local citizens form the Third Battery Volunteer Artillery at Newcastle in response to the threat of invasion from Russia.
1856	Introduction of Responsible Government in NSW.
1857	Construction of a lighthouse on Nobbys Head renders the 1822 coal beacon on Signal Hill redundant. Harbour Master Captain David Allan moves into the Signal Master's cottage at Signal Hill.
1860	Formation of the Newcastle Volunteer Rifles and Naval Brigade; Signal Hill used for target practice through to the 1870s.
1863-64	Captain Allan testifies at the Royal Commission on the defences of the Colony that there are six guns "buried in the sand" on Signal Hill.
1866	Three 32 lb smooth bore muzzle loading field guns are sent to Newcastle, and installed at Signal Hill to protect the harbour entrance.



Year	Description
1869	New flagstaff for hoisting storm signals is erected on Signal Hill.
1870	A Board is appointed by the Government to improve harbour defences in the Colony. Board members visit Newcastle and inspect Signal Hill as a possible defence site. The last remaining Imperial troops depart Australian shores in August 1870.
1871	The Military and Naval Forces Act of NSW 1871 empowers the Government to raise and maintain permanent naval and military forces in the colony. The NSW Artillery is raised on 1 August 1871, with its headquarters at Dawes Point.
1871-1914	A time gun is fired from Fort Scratchley to synchronise the time ball at Customs House.
1872	Six guns are brought to NSW from the Royal Gun Factory in England in 1872; two of these are sent to Signal Hill.
1874	Two 68 lb smooth bore muzzle loader guns temporarily mounted on traversing platforms at Signal Hill (replacing the two 32 lb guns installed in 1866).
1876	Ongoing hostilities between Russia and England. The NSW Government seeks advice from Sir William Jervois to review colonial defences.
1877	A Legislative Assembly address calls for the immediate construction of defences in Newcastle. Peter Scratchley and William Jervois are commissioned to advise on colonial defences and visit Newcastle in May, and select Signal Hill as a future fort site. They recommend three 9 inch RML guns be emplaced on the site. A new signal mast is installed on Signal Hill.
1878	In April, work begins on temporary defences for Newcastle at Signal Hill, supervised by the Colonial Architect James Barnet. Four 80 lb RML guns are placed in the temporary battery by mid-May, and huts for the artillerymen are completed by June.
1880	Construction begins on permanent fortifications at Signal Hill to a design by French-born engineer Gustavus A. Morrell from the NSW Colonial Architect's Office (plans approved by Jervois and Scratchley).
1881	Scratchley and Major Roberts visit Newcastle in May to inspect the progress of works being carried out on the fortifications.
1882	Artillery is placed into position within the fort, comprising a battery of three 9 inch RML guns mounted <i>en barbette</i> to cover seaward approaches, three 80 lb RML casemated guns to protect the harbour entrance and one 80 lb RML gun to cover the inner harbour and the river approaches to the city. The Signal Station is temporarily removed to Nobbys Head until 1898 and moved there permanently in 1914 (the Signal Station operated at Fort Scratchley 1898-1914).
1883	Plans submitted for accommodation for permanent troops (i.e. barracks etc) in September 1883; tender is called for their construction in March 1885.
1885	Sir Peter Henry Scratchley dies en route to Australia after contracting malaria in Papua New Guinea; the name Fort Scratchley becomes official name for the fortification on Signal Hill from at least 1886.
1886	The barracks complex, designed by Gustavus Morrell and Colonial Architect James Barnet, takes 11 months to build and is completed by April 1886; the barracks include the Commandant's Quarters, Main Barracks, Guardhouse with two cells, laboratory, toilet and bathing blocks; also dry ditch and defensive wall.
1887	A recommendation by Major General Schaw to upgrade NSW defences includes a second gun battery for Newcastle at Shepherds Hill (around 1km to the south of Fort Scratchley).
1889-91	Tender is accepted to extensively remodel the gun pits, and to build a new gun pit immediately east of existing gun pits (James Barnet's suggestion to remove the

Year	Description
	northern signal mast used by the harbour pilot and to replace it with a new gun pit is carried out). A tram from Parnell Place is used to transport building materials. Four disappearing guns are mounted in 1889. Perimeter fortifications for Fort Scratchley comprising a 170 foot long loopholed brick and concrete wall with gates inside the trench are completed during this period.
1889-92	Newcastle's harbour defences are boosted by the laying of 20 submarine mines along entrance to the harbour. Newcastle's torpedo defence system is manned by the Submarine Miners.
1892-93	The range finding and gun captain's positions are changed at Fort Scratchley from their original location between the gun pits. Two new positions are constructed in the left and right flanks of the disappearing guns. A third position for fire commander is built to the rear of the parade ground overlooking the centre of the gun battery.
1894-95	The range finding and gun captain's positions are rebuilt in an expanded form with wrought iron roofs and shutters. Depression range finders are also installed allowing the range and bearing of incoming ships to be accurately gauged. One 1.5 inch Nordenfelt quick firing machine gun is installed at Fort Scratchley. The Nordenfelt gun replaced the three 80 lb RML guns in the casemate. The last remaining 80 lb gun was removed from Fort Scratchley in 1907.
1896	A battery is constructed at Shepherds Hill, armed with an 8 inch disappearing gun.
1898	A new 8 inch gun is installed.
1901	Control of NSW defences is taken over by the newly formed Commonwealth Government of Australia.
1907	The last remaining 80 lb RML gun in the western barbette immediately adjoining the casemate battery is removed.
1910-11	The fortifications are enlarged. An observation post and a signal tower are constructed. The Nordenfelt gun is removed from eastern end of the casemate battery and the eastern emplacement converted to a magazine. A 6 inch Mark VII BL gun replaces the four disappearing guns, and a second 6 inch gun is placed at ground level between the central and northern disappearing guns. A roof is added to the northern disappearing gun pit with steel shield from the old disappearing gun set into concrete; this area is used as a shell store.
1913	Outbreak of a fire at Fort Scratchley.
1912-13	Construction of Fort Wallace near Stockton armed with two 6 inch MK VII guns.
1914	Signal Station permanently moved to Nobbys Head; a new Battery Observation Post is built behind the new guns to house a range-finder and command centre.
1914-18	First World War. Fort Scratchley does not see action during this time.
1920s	The 39th Fortress Company is based at Fort Scratchley from c. 1921 and is responsible for manning the searchlights of Newcastle's defences.
1939-40	Fort Scratchley fortifications enlarged in 1939. Fort Wallace is armed with long range guns.
1939-45	Outbreak of the Second World War in 1939. During the war, all of Newcastle's defences are controlled from an observation post at Shepherds Hill (Park Battery Observation Post).

Year	Description
1940s	A Rations Block is erected between the western guard house and bathrooms; a searchlight directing station is added to the southeastern corner to control the three searchlights for Fort Scratchley.
1942	Return of enemy fire from a Japanese submarine on the evening of 7 June 1942. The first intake of female officers and other ranks from the Australian Women's Army Service (AWAS) is accepted in October 1942. Newcastle's close defence system is upgraded.
1945	Italian POWs are accommodated at Fort Scratchley for up to two years from 1945.
1954	Fort Scratchley is used by National Service Scheme for militia training; the unit is then known as the 13th Medium Coast Battery RAA.
1962	Fort Scratchley becomes the base of a light anti-aircraft battery armed with 40 mm Bofors guns; it is renamed 113th Light Anti-Aircraft Battery RAA.
1965	The remaining 6 inch Mk VII guns are fired for the last time in night target practice in March 1962; these guns are relocated to King Edwards Park/Obelisk Park in 1965, although they are returned to Fort Scratchley in 1978.
1972	The Australian Army vacates Fort Scratchley and the 113th Light Anti-Aircraft Battery RAA is relocated to Adamstown.
1974	Restoration works begin and continues for the next ten years.
1977	City of Newcastle Council given lease of Fort Scratchley site; Newcastle Maritime Museum Society become the new tenants.
1978	Fort Scratchley is placed on the Register of the National Estate; the 6 inch Mk VII guns are returned to the fort.
1981	Exhibition of Fort Scratchley memorabilia during Heritage Week attracts many visitors to the site and lays the foundation for the formation of the Fort Scratchley Historical Society.
1982	Centennial celebrations at Fort Scratchley on 3 April. The Fort Scratchley Military Museum, located in the newly restored Commandant's Cottage, is officially opened to the public.
1993	Preparation of a CMP for Fort Scratchley by Godden Mackay.
1998	Formation of Fort Scratchley Historical Society Incorporated.
2000	Restoration of 1850s 80 lb RML gun, fired in 2001 to mark Australia's Centenary of Federation.
2004	Fort Scratchley is closed for restoration works until 2008.
2007-2017	Fort Scratchley is nominated for the National Heritage List, however, the nominations are unsuccessful and ineligible for consideration.
2008	Ownership of Fort Scratchley is transferred from the Australian Government to the City of Newcastle Council. Fort Scratchley Historical Society resumes day-to-day management of the Fort Scratchley site and reopens the military museum in 2009. Fort Scratchley is removed from the Commonwealth Heritage List. Preparation of a Heritage Management Plan for Fort Scratchley by Suters Architects in association with Dawbin Architects.
2013	Preparation of a Plan of Management for Fort Scratchley by the Future City Group of The City of Newcastle Council.
2014	Cliff stabilisation works undertaken along Fort Drive and Shortland Esplanade.

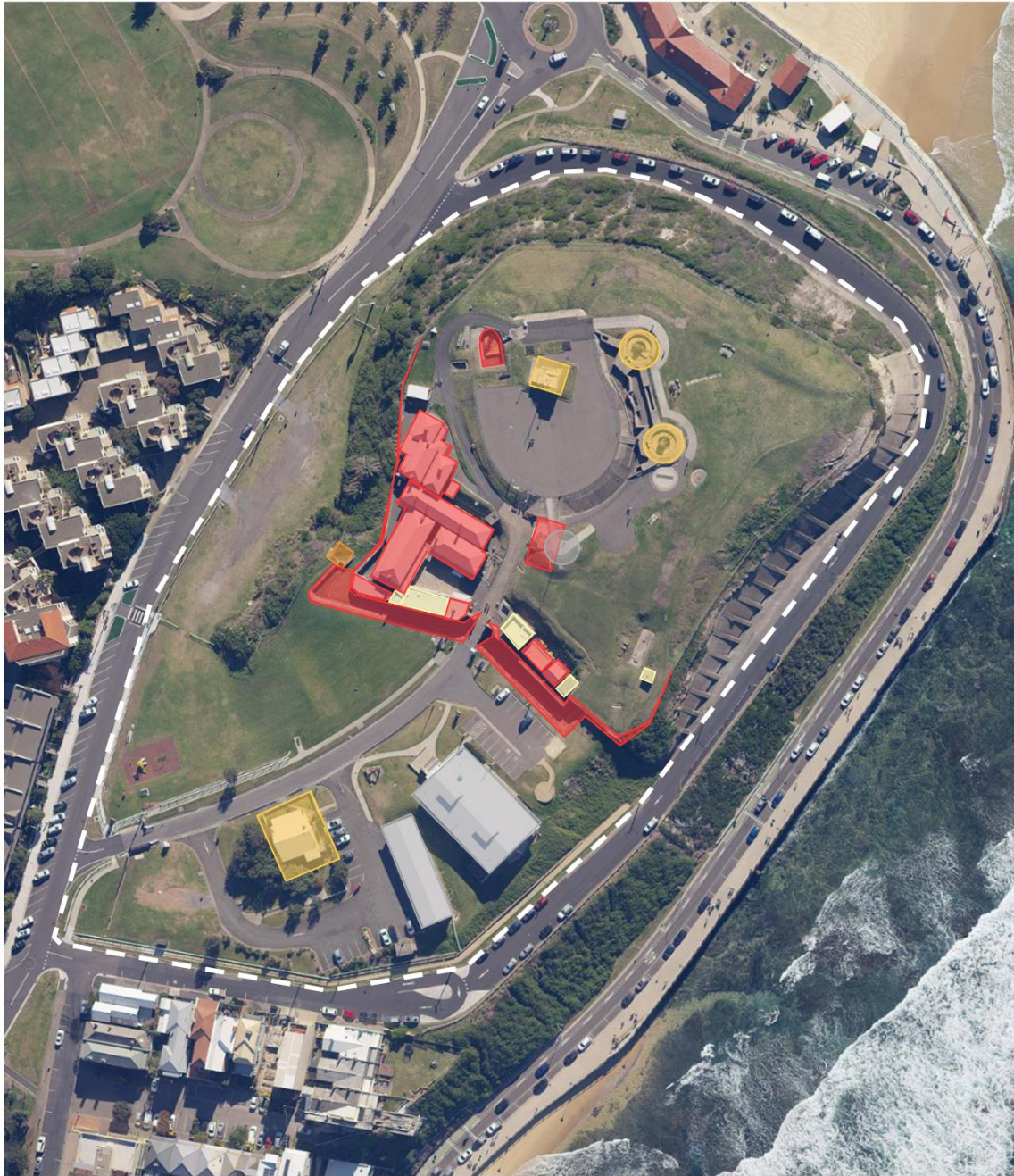
Table 2. Summary Timeline of Events

## 2.9. Key Phases of Development

This CMP identifies the major phases of the development of the Fort Scratchley site, as follows:

- **Phase 1 (Pre-Settlement - Early 1800s)** - the future site of Fort Scratchley is mined for its exposed coal seams; it is then known as Colliers Point
- **Phase 2 (1811-1878)** - A coal beacon and flag staff to aid harbour navigation are erected on Signal Hill. Early armaments are installed on Signal Hill and this early fort is known as Fort Fiddlesticks for its perceived ineffectiveness
- **Phase 3 (1878-1880)** - Temporary fortifications are constructed on Signal Hill in the interim period prior to construction of permanent fortifications
- **Phase 4 (1880-1886)** - Original construction of Fort Scratchley, the gun emplacements and casemate batteries are finished by 1882 and the associated barracks buildings are completed 1886
- **Phase 5 (1889-1894)** - Construction of the Mines Firing Station and modifications to the emplacements for the installation of the disappearing guns
- **Phase 6 (1910-1920s)** - Replacements of the disappearing guns with Mk VII BL guns. The Battery Observation Post is constructed to replace existing depression range finder structures. A number of accommodations structures for married officers were constructed on the outer fort.
- **Phase 7 (1939-1945)** - Construction of a new guard house and conversion of Old Guardhouse building into communications centre. The Old Guardhouse is also extended, and further searchlights and a Searchlight Direction Station added.
- **Phase 8 (1974-1977)** - Phase 1 reconstruction works comprising temporary reconstruction works to the battery and barracks complex. Increased security installed at the site.
- **Phase 9 (1978-1986)** - Phase 2 reconstruction works undertaken to reinstate and repair severely damaged elements, including the Commandant's Cottage, cast iron verandah columns, the tunnels and Battery Observation Post, and the inner fort gates.
- **Phase 10 (2005-2008)** - Phase 3 reconstruction works undertaken prior to the transfer of ownership of the site to City of Newcastle Council. Major refurbishment of the site and installation of new services (power, water, sewer, fire services and communications). A new multipurpose centre building and new workshop building are constructed in the outer fort precinct.





LEGEND

Phase 4  
 Phase 7

Phase 5  
 Phase 10

Phase 6

NOTE The base plans have been prepared by Suters Architects Pty Ltd.

Fort Scratchley Historic Site  
 SHR no. 01674  
 Site Plan



Figure 22. Phases of development at Fort Scratchley referring to phase descriptions in Section 2.9. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)

### 2.9.1. Phase 1: Pre-Settlement - Early 1800s

#### Built Fabric

It is likely that the area around Fort Scratchley Signal Hill was used by the local Awabakal peoples as a gathering site for the abundant material and subsistence resources located in the area. Following European settlement of the Newcastle region in the early 1800s, the area around Signal Hill provided necessary material resources such as coal (mined underneath and around Signal Hill), timber (as evidenced by the nearby Convict Lumber Yards), and sand and oysters from the surrounding beaches.

#### Landscape

First Fleet diarist David Collins describes the landscape around Signal Hill:

*[Lieutenant John Shortland] entered a river which he named Hunter river, about ten leagues to the southward of Port Stephens...the entrance of this river was but narrow, and covered by a high rocky Island [Nobbys Island], lying right off it, so as to leave a good passage round the north end of the island, between that and the shore. A reef connects the south part of the island with the south shore of the entrance of the river. In this harbour was found a very considerable quantity of coal of a very good sort, and lying so near the water side as to be conveniently shipped; which gave it, in this particular, a manifest advantage over that discovered to the southward.*<sup>106</sup>

#### Views

Signal Hill is noted as being a promontory of the headland with extensive views of the ocean and harbour entrance. The site was surrounded by water prior to the construction of Macquarie Pier and the connection of Nobbys Island to the mainland.

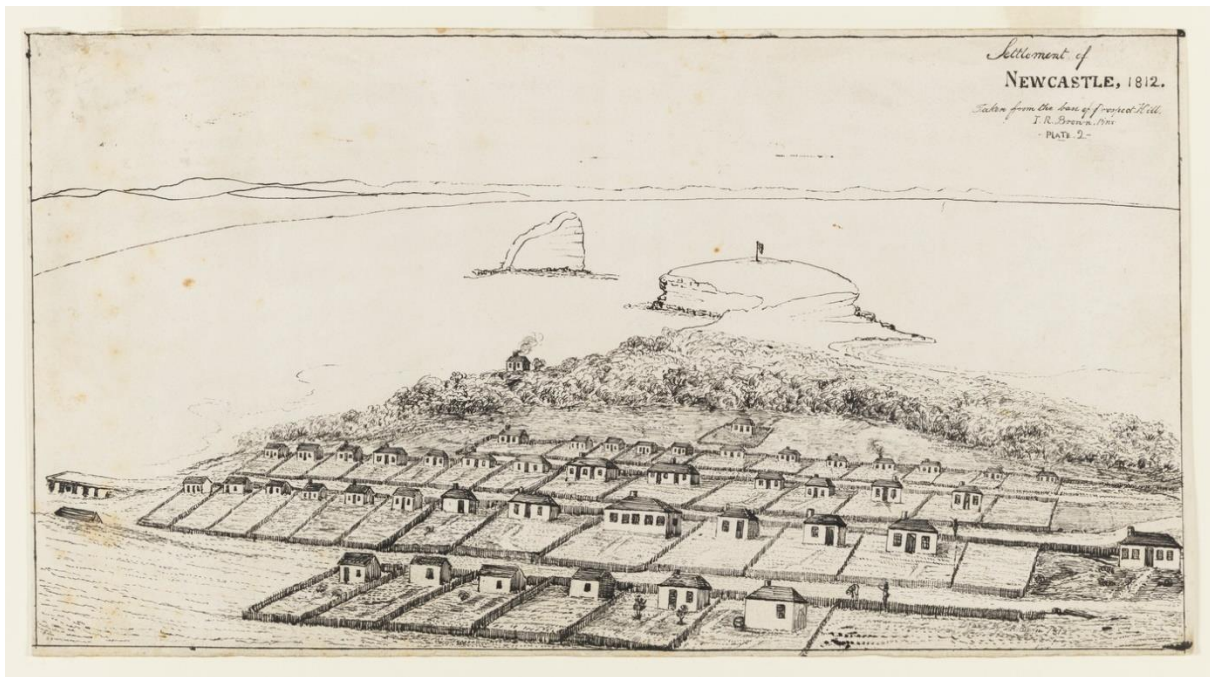


Figure 23. View towards Signal Hill and Nobbys Island. (Source: Settlement of Newcastle, taken from the base of Prospect Hill, 1812, T.R. Brown. State Library of New South Wales, FL3273101)

<sup>106</sup> David Collins, "An Account of the English Colony in NSW From Its First Settlement, in January 1788, to August 1801. Volume 2," (Sydney, University of Sydney Library, 2003), 40.



## 2.9.2. Phase 2: 1811-1878

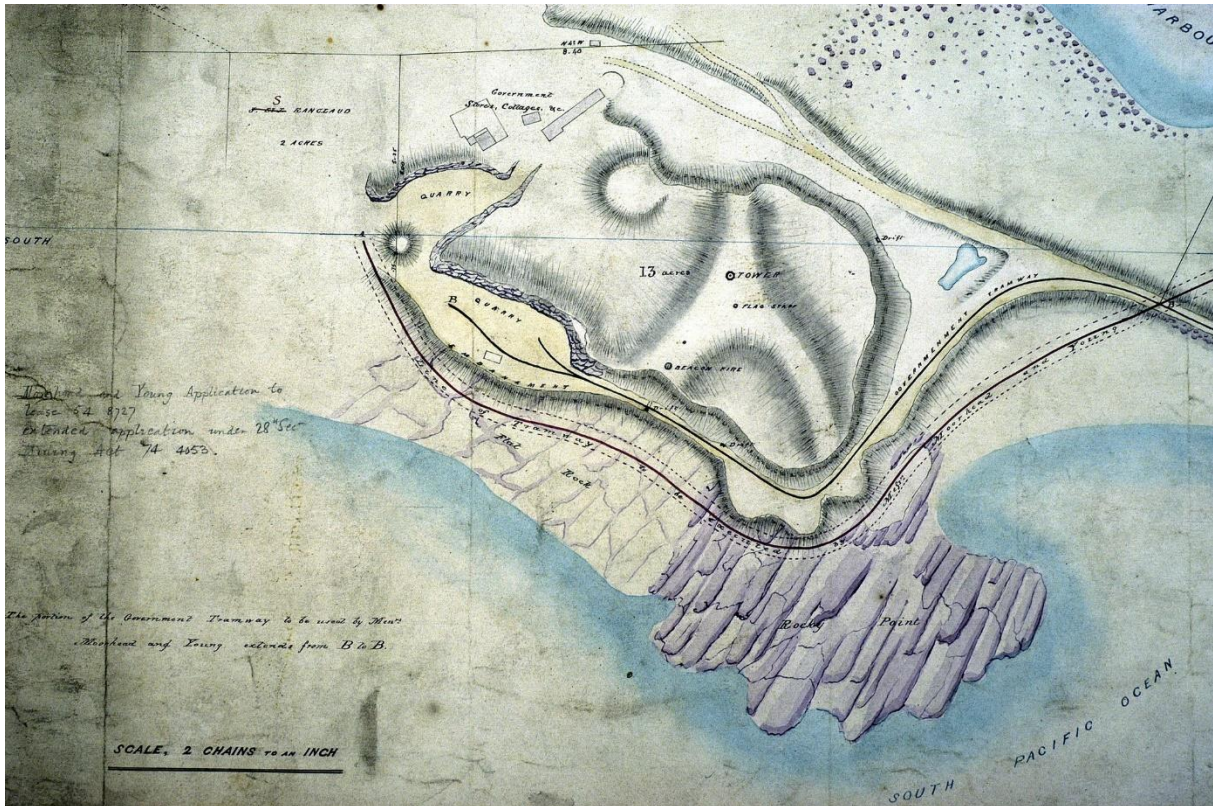


Figure 24. Plan of Flag Staff Hill, Newcastle. (Source: P. Francis Adams - Plan of Flag Staff Hill Newcastle - 2 April 1856 (Detail). University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, <https://livinghistories.newcastle.edu.au/assets/display/299312-max?u=>)

### Built Fabric

During this period, Signal Hill was developed for multiple purposes; a coal beacon and flagstaff to aid harbour navigation are erected, an earthen battery of seven guns colloquially called Fort Fiddlesticks is operational, and an eight lamp lighthouse is built on the site. Subsequent armament upgrades are also made during this period, including two guns sent from the Royal Gun Factory in England in 1872. During this period, Nobbys Island is connected to the mainland following the construction of Macquarie Pier.

### Landscape

While the landscape on top of Signal Hill changed due to the construction of various structures, the surrounding landscape was also developing after Newcastle ceased its role as a site of secondary punishment for re-offending convicts.

### Views

Views gained during this period to and from the site would most likely have been similar to those achieved in the early 1800s.



Figure 25. View towards Newcastle Harbour showing Nobbys Island still disconnected from the mainland. The flagstaff at point 'S' marks Signal Hill. (Source: C 40: Sir Thomas Mitchell field book: Port Jackson and Newcastle, 1828. Mitchell Library, State Library of NSW, 9AL4OL5Y)



Figure 26. View of flagstaff and pagoda on Signal Hill. (Source: Illustration, Newcastle from the Harbour, 1821, [artist unknown]. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, C918-0185)



Figure 27. Sketch showing Harbour Master's residence on Signal Hill, also known as Allan's Hill after the Harbour Master. (Source: View of the infirmary, gaol, Harbour Master's residence etc sketched on the spot, c. 1870, Margaret Laidler. Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 345 000256)



### 2.9.3. Phase 3: 1878-1880

#### Built Fabric

Construction of temporary fortification structures were undertaken during this period of development. They consisted of two defensive barriers or parapets (traverses), one facing the breakwater and the other facing east over the ocean. Four 80 lb guns were installed in these temporary structures.

#### Landscape

Limited information is known about the landscaping present during this period of development. It is likely that the majority of the site was cleared in anticipation of the construction of permanent fortification structures. The photographs below provide a limited indication of the landscape conditions at Fort Scratchley and its surrounds.

#### Views

At this time, Fort Scratchley would have had strong visual links with Nobbys Head, the surrounding water, as well as urban landmarks like Newcastle Customs House, due to the lack of urban development surrounding the subject site.



Figure 28. View of Newcastle from Signal Hill. Note the view to Newcastle Customs House on the right (indicated by orange arrow). (Source: Newcastle from Allen's Hill (Fort Scratchley) (Allen was a harbourmaster), [nd], [photographer unknown], donated by Mr E. Braggett. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, A5194-019.5)



Group of soldiers on foreshores, Newcastle. [n.d.]

Figure 29. Volunteer Artillery at Fort Scratchley. Note the temporary emplacement structure. (Source: Fort Scratchley Newcastle, NSW, [1879], [photographer unknown]. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, <https://livinghistories.newcastle.edu.au/assets/display/298730-max?u=>)



2.9.4. Phase 4: 1880-1886

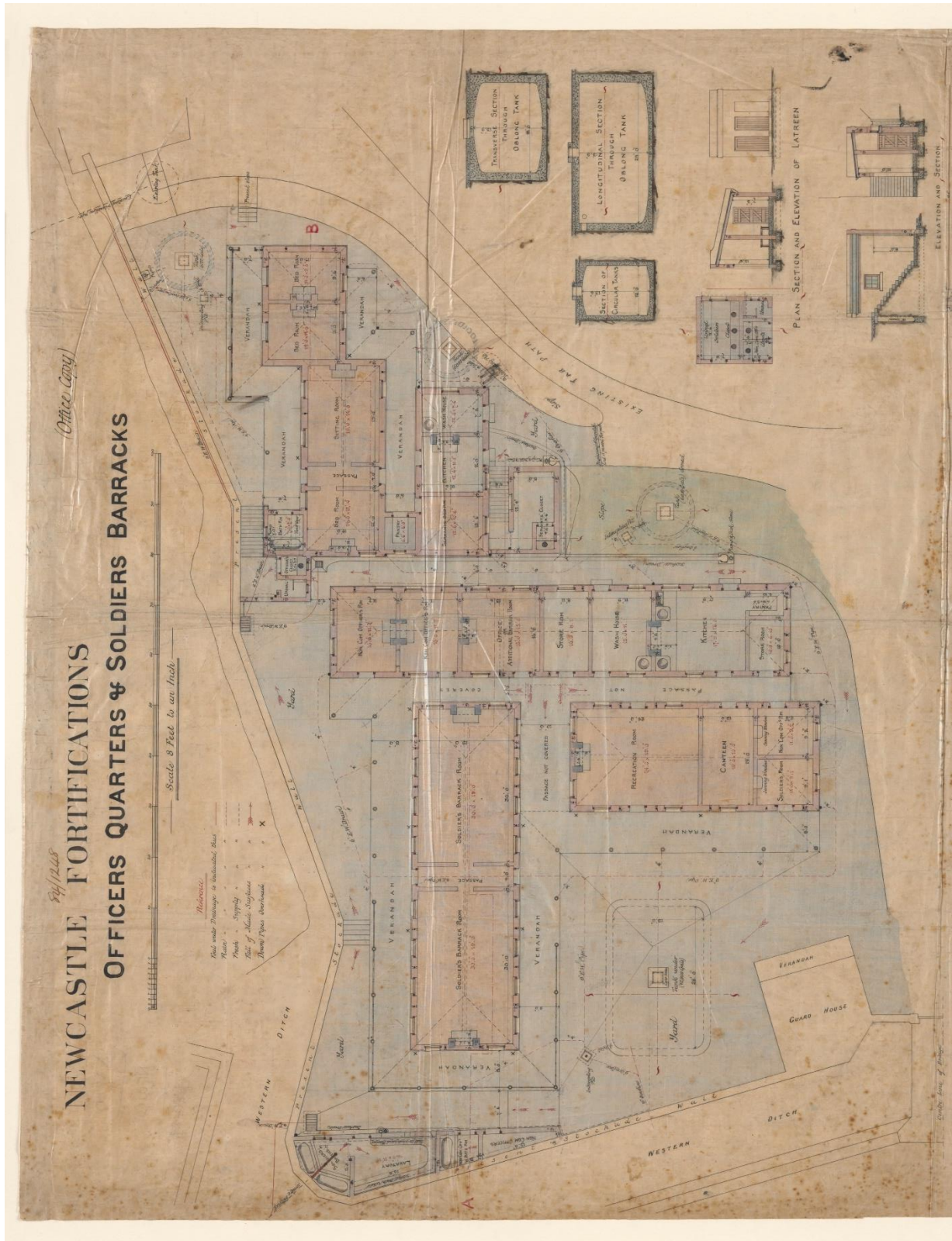


Figure 30. Floor plan of Fort Scratchley barracks complex. (Source: Newcastle Fortifications, Office Quarters & Soldiers Barracks, c.1884, NSW Colonial Architect's Office. Museums of History NSW, NRS-4335-9-[Plan2348]-84/1248)



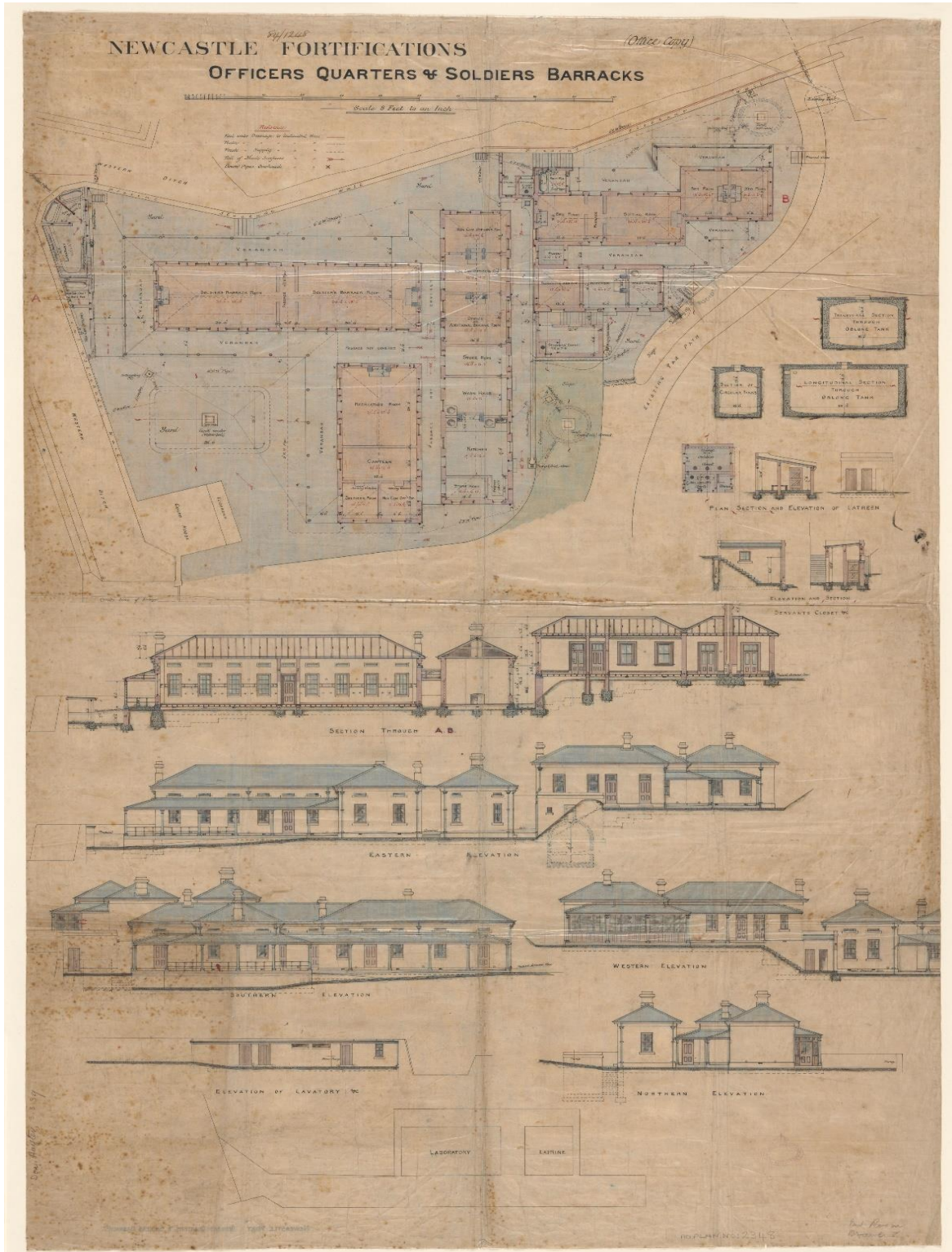


Figure 31. NSW Colonial Architect's Office plans showing site plan and elevations of barracks complex buildings. (Source: Newcastle Fortifications, Office Quarters & Soldiers Barracks, c. 1884, NSW Colonial Architect's Office. Museums of History NSW, NRS-4335-9-[Plan2348]-84/1248)

### Built Fabric

Construction of permanent fortification structures commenced in June 1880. The initial phase of construction consisted of the casemate batteries and magazine level, and the original gun pits for the 9 inch guns. These were completed in April 1882. The next phase of development occurring from 1885-1886 consisted of the construction of the barracks complex and associated buildings in the inner fort. The barracks complex comprises of the Commandant's Cottage, Barracks building, Canteen, NCOs' Quarters, Original Guardhouse, Laboratory building, and separate Ablution blocks. Works also commenced for the construction of the Fort's independent underground water system, consisting of eight tanks, and the Fort's perimeter fortifications.

### Landscape

During this time, the Fort's generally barren landscape would have been maintained in that way as an essential component of the Fort's operation as a coastal defence site.

### Views

As with the previous phase, Fort Scratchley would have maintained its strong visual links over the surrounding water and further towards today's CBD area. However, during this time there is also a noticeable increase in residential development as the city of Newcastle grew, although its impact on visual links is minimal.



Figure 32. View of Newcastle from Fort Scratchley. The Convict Lumber Yards and Newcastle Customs House can be seen on the right (indicated by orange arrow). Shepherds Hill is visible in the distance to the left. (Source: Newcastle from Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, c.1880s, [photographer unknown]. Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 045 000121)





Figure 33. View to Fort Scratchley outer fort from the inner fort. Note the ongoing construction of the dry ditch wall, gates and bridge behind the Old Guardhouse. The Old Guardhouse building is indicated with a red arrow to the right. (Source: Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, 1886, [photographer unknown]. Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 056 000329)



Figure 34. Artistic rendition of view to Signal Hill and Nobbys Head. (Source: Newcastle, NSW, 1886, [artist unknown]. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, C917-0032)



## 2.9.5. Phase 5: 1889-1894

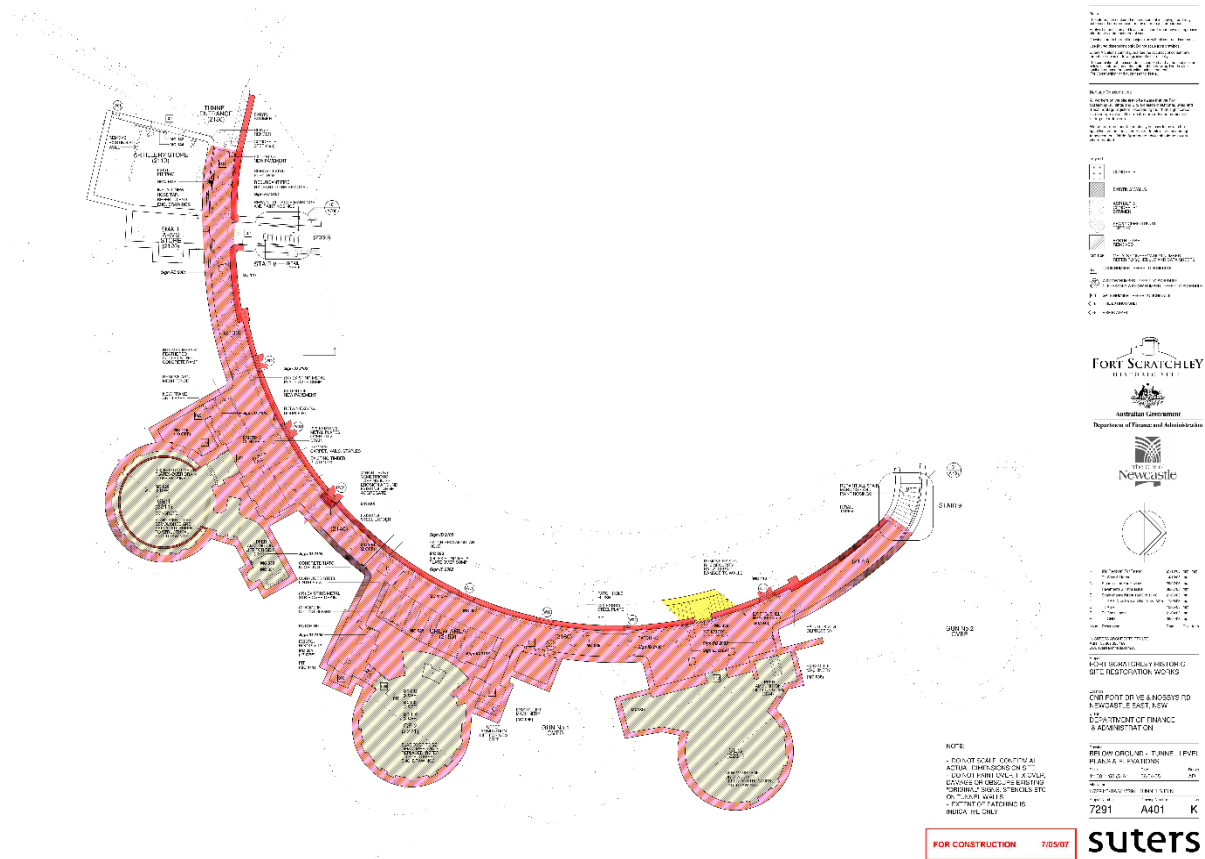


Figure 35. Floor plan of the upper tunnels level indicating phases of development. Elements shaded red were introduced during the 1889-1892 works. Elements shaded yellow were introduced during the 1910-11 works. Hatched elements indicate roofing/covers. (Source: *Below Ground - Tunnel Level Plans & Elevations, 2005, Suters Architects, adapted by CPH*)

### Built Fabric

This phase of development resulted from recommendations made by Major General H. Schaw in 1887 about the site's armaments and the increasingly outdated guns installed in the emplacements. In this time, the northern signal mast and pilot's lookout were removed and a new emplacement was to take their place including a new gun pit on the north end of the eastern arc. The existing gun pits were made circular and new shell recesses and arms stores were added although the existing ammunition lifts were retained. A wall was constructed on the west side of the arched passage that provided circulation between the gun pits and it was roofed over. An internal blast proof wall construction was added to the southernmost gun pit.

In 1894, the electrical link between Fort Scratchley and the submarine mine system in Newcastle Harbour also came online allowing remote detonation from Fort Scratchley or from the Pilot Station. This suggests that the Mine Firing Station (Building 17) was constructed during this phase of development, however, the 2008 Heritage Management Plan suggests that it is also likely that it was part of a later phase of development.

### Landscape

There is limited information about whether the landscaping of the site changed during this period, however, it is likely that, again, the Fort's barren landscape was maintained fundamental to the site's operative needs. The landscape of the parade ground and emplacements sub-complex would have changed in this time due to the roofing of the arched passageway to form the upper tunnel level.

## Views

As with the previous phase, it is likely that the site's strong visual links with its surrounds were maintained, although ongoing urban development would have continued around the site.



Figure 36. Newcastle Harbour from Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, NSW, November 1890, Ralph Snowball (1849-1925). (Source: University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, ASGN0579-B24)

**2.9.6. Phase 6: 1910-1920s**

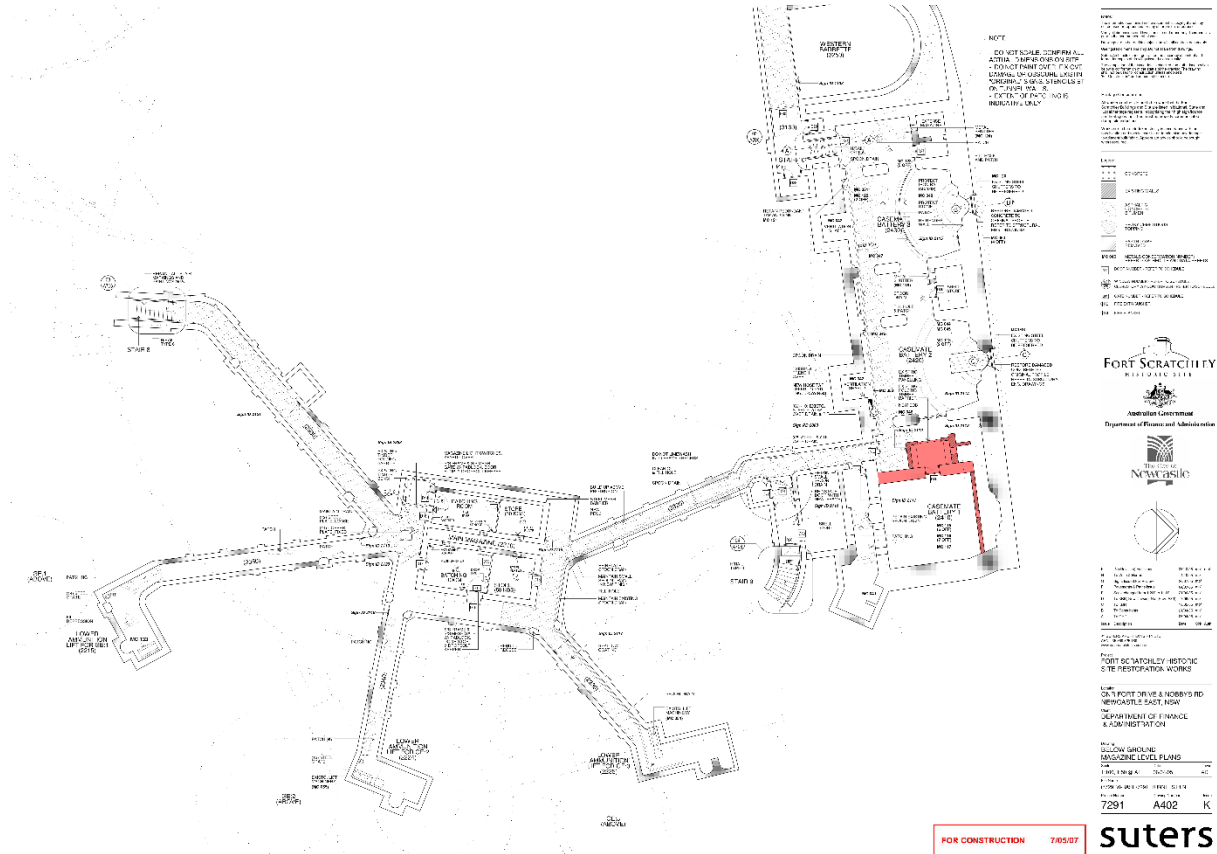


Figure 37. Plans for magazine level of the tunnels complex. The magazine level remains mostly unchanged from its original construction, however, the eastern casemate battery, shaded red, was converted to an additional magazine during 1910-11. (Source: Below Ground - Magazine Level Plans, 2005, Sutera Architects, adapted by CPH)

**Built Fabric**

This period saw minor changes to the Fort's built fabric. Most notably, the eastern arc of gun pits were covered with reinforced concrete supported by bullhead profile rails as they were replaced by two new pits which housed the Fort's 6 inch Mk VII guns. These guns required shallower pits than the former disappearing guns and were located over the former northern pit added during the 1889-1894 phase of development and partially over the number two pit (counting from south to north). New shell and armoury stores were built around the guns and the shell lifts were modified. The easternmost casemate battery was also converted to an additional magazine. This involved the insertion of an interior brick wall in front of the former embrasure and new doorways on the west wall. The signal station at the parade ground became obsolete and was demolished to allow construction of the Battery Observation Post. In addition to changes in the inner fort, this period of development also saw the construction of several weatherboard cottages used for married living quarters in the outer fort Precinct, including nine cottages were which aligned along Nobbys Road; the Master Gunner's Cottage is the only extant example of these accommodation structures.

**Landscape**

Landscaping details of the time are limited in historic resources, however, the landscape of the upper fort would have been altered due to the erection of the Battery Observation Post and the covering of the gun pits with reinforced concrete. The landscape of the outer fort would have also changed due to the construction of married living quarters along the Fort's driveway.



## Views

The views from Fort Scratchley would have remained similar to those prior to this phase of development, with the construction of the Battery Observation Post limiting some views out of the Commandant's Cottage. Ongoing development of the site's surrounds would also have occurred during this time, however, Fort Scratchley's relative elevation to its surrounds would have mitigated loss of visual links.



Figure 38. View to Fort Scratchley. (Source: Newcastle East and Fort Scratchley, 1906, [photographer unknown]. Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 102 000036)

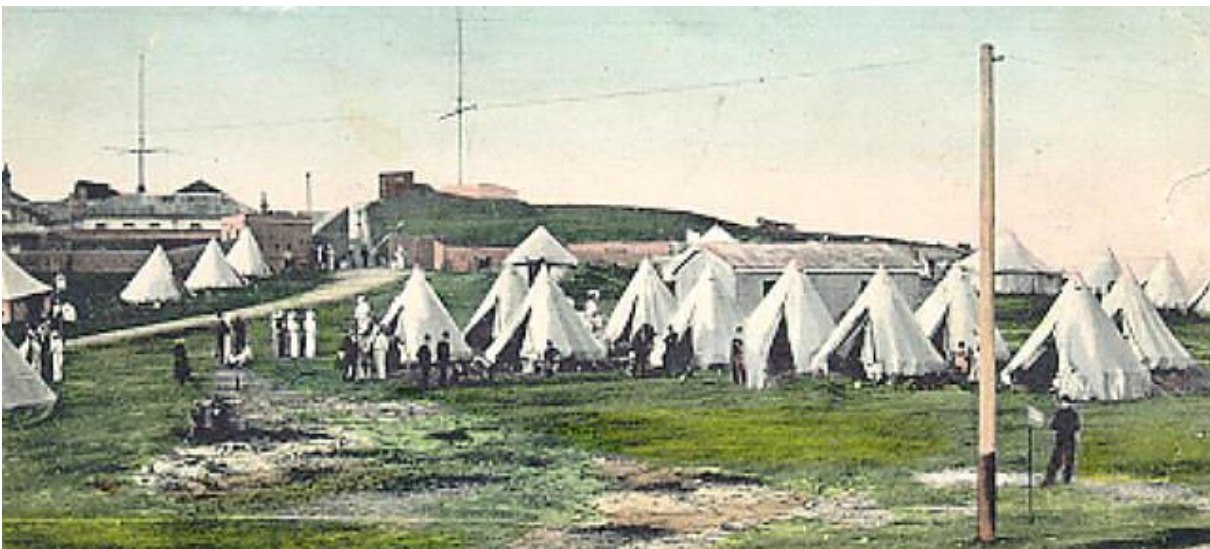


Figure 39. Artistic rendition of view towards Fort Scratchley inner fort. (Source: Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, N.S.W, c. 1909, [artist unknown]. Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 163 000157)



2.9.7. Phase 7: 1939-1945

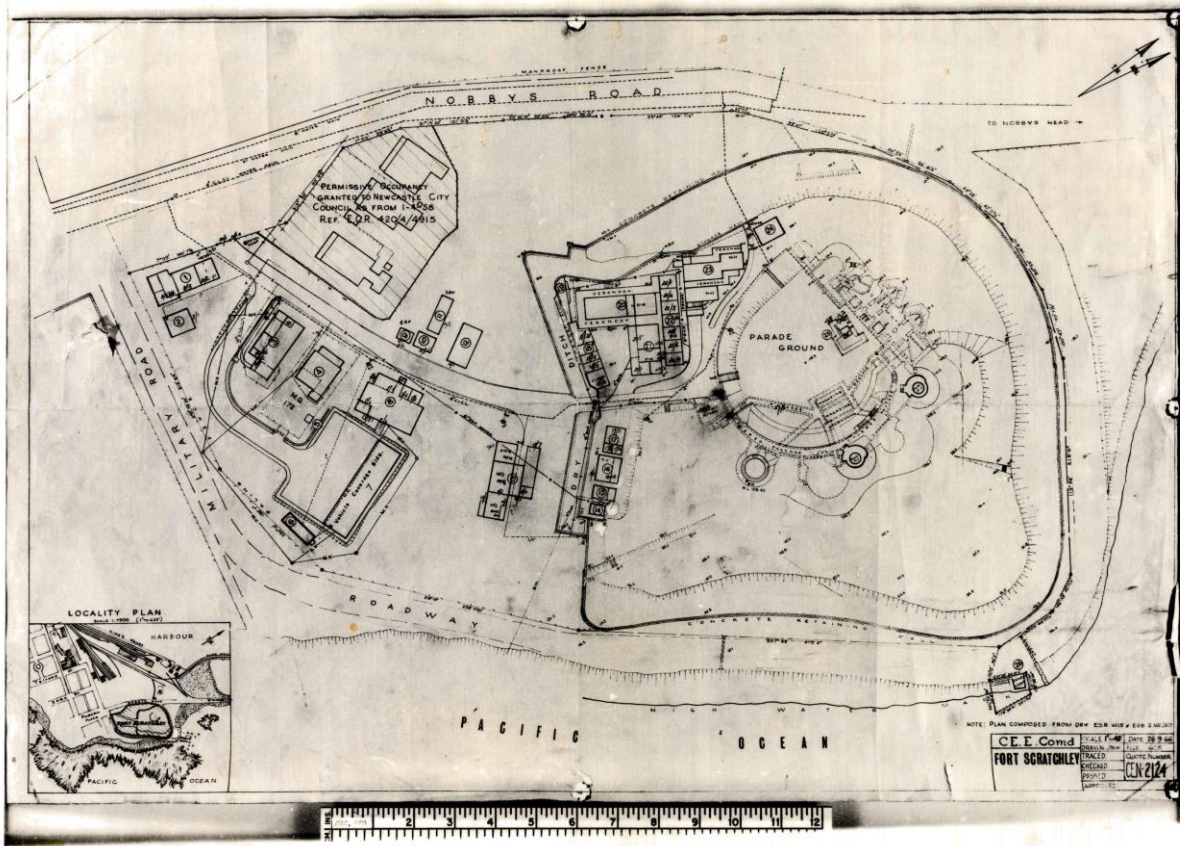


Figure 40. Fort Scratchley site plan showing additional WWII and postwar structures. (Source: Plan of Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, NSW, 26 September 1966, CE.E.Comd. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, M2994)

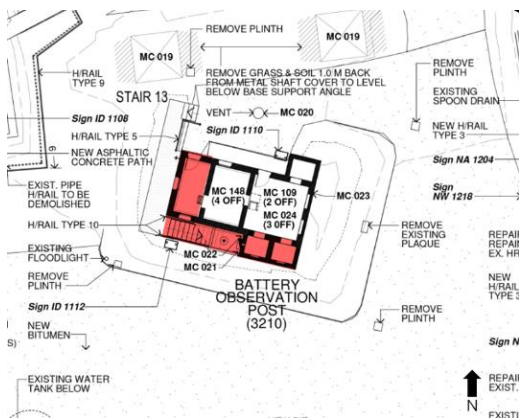


Figure 41. The Battery Observation Post was modified during WWII. The observation level was extended over the ground floor stores, a single storey extension was added to the west, and a new steel staircase leading to the observation level was added. (Source: Part Site Plan - North Above Ground, 2005, Suters Architects)



Figure 42. Floor plans showing WWII additions. A new guardhouse and generator room were constructed to the east of the gates. The Old Guardhouse was extended to the west and a new rations block was constructed between the NCOs' Ablutions and the Old Guardhouse. Internally, a new wall was inserted in the Old Guardhouse separating the southern cell from the main room. (Source: Gate/Courtyard Floor Plans Lower, 2005, Suters Architects)

### Built Fabric

Significant changes to the inner fort buildings were undertaken during this time. The New Guardhouse and Searchlight Generator Room were constructed to the east of the Fort gates and the Old Guardhouse was converted to a communications centre after additional stores and officers' bathing facilities were added to the space between the Old Guardhouse and existing NCOs' Ablutions. The Battery Observation Post was also extended across the ground floor stores with timber floors and an extension was added to its western elevation. Searchlights, the aforementioned generator room, and a Searchlight Directing Station were also added to the Fort; these were typical military structures of their type, being flat roofed reinforced concrete structures. The Searchlight Directing Station is located downhill to the east of the generator room.

This period of development also saw changes to the outer fort precinct. The earlier cottages constructed within the outer fort were replaced by a Royal Australian Engineers camp, which itself was later removed from site in 1947. By 1947 an Ambulance station had also been constructed east of the junction of the Fort approach and Nobbys Road, consisting of a double garage, with four adjoining rooms and a separate single garage.

### Landscape

As with previous phases, the vegetation at Fort Scratchley would have been maintained to allow effective operation of the Fort and its many observation points. In addition, the overall landscape of the site was altered during the Second World War to meet operational needs following the attack on Newcastle in June 1942. Photographic evidence from this time indicates that the structures of the inner fort around the parade ground and gun emplacements were covered with low profile camouflage (Figure 43)

### Views

The views from the Fort would have changed during this time owing to the additional structures that were added during this time, however, these developments were low scale with small footprints. There was also continuing residential development of the surrounding area and the CBD.

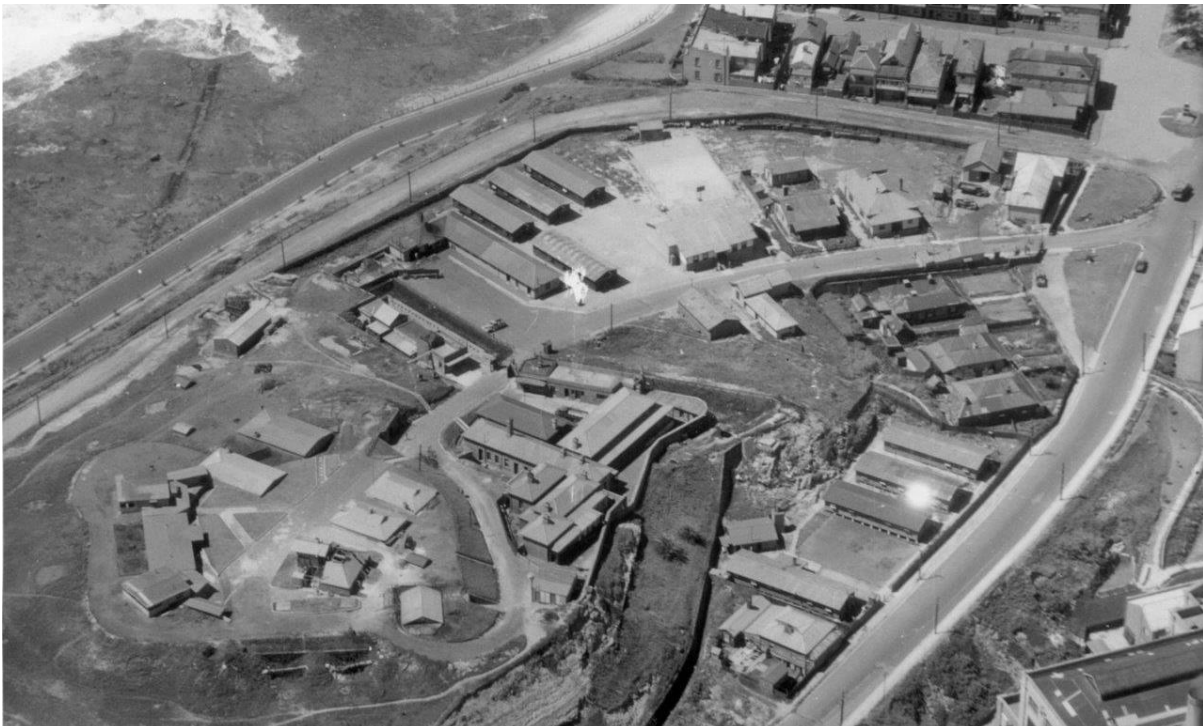


Figure 43. Aerial view over Fort Scratchley showing camouflaged structures following the Japanese submarine attack on 7-8 June 1942. (Source: Aerial photograph of Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, NSW, 1 December 1942, R.A.A.F. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, FN\_402\_03a)





Figure 44. View to Fort Scratchley from Newcastle Beach. (Source: Newcastle Beach looking towards Fort Scratchley, c.1920-1940, [photographer unknown]. Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 045 000119)



Figure 45. View over Tasman Sea from No. 2 Gun. (Source: 6-inch MK II gun practice, Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, NSW, [1960s], [photographer unknown]. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, FNC\_402\_01)

### 2.9.8. Phase 8: 1974-1977



Figure 46. Aerial view of Fort Scratchley. Note the absence of guns in the gun pits, dating the photo to between 1965-1978 when the current guns were returned to the fort. (Source: Aerial view of Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, Australia, c.1965-1978, [photographer unknown]. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, P3035-13)





Figure 47. View of Barracks building western elevation. (Source: K.G. Edwards Photographic views of Newcastle, c. 1971-3 Vol. 3 City (East End); Major intersections: 68. A Section of Fort Scratchley 13 Feb. '72. Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 047 000106)



Figure 48. Ablutions block ruins at Fort Scratchley, with city behind. September 1977. (Source: Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, NSW, Australia, 1977, [photographer unknown]. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, A8804-P0181)

### Built Fabric

The first phase of major reconstruction works was undertaken during this time. However, this initial phase concentrated on security, with the installation of a man proof perimeter fence, renovation of the lighting in the underground areas of the gun emplacements and hiring a security patrol. Further works undertaken this time also included securing the underground tunnels and major reconstruction works on the barracks complex buildings prior to the handover to the Maritime Museum for their use. These reconstruction works included the replacement of damaged or missing floorboards, the replication of doors, windows, columns and window sills. Waterproofing works were also undertaken which consisted of new roofing, guttering and down-pipes throughout the barracks complex and also involved cleaning and painting of existing surfaces.

### Landscape

No changes to the landscape identified.

### Views

Ongoing development of the surrounding areas towards the CBD would have further limited historic visual links from Fort Scratchley to other sites particularly within the CBD area, however, this would have been minimised due to Fort Scratchley's relative elevation.



Figure 49. View to Fort Scratchley from Horseshoe Beach, Newcastle, NSW, Australia, 1977. (Source: University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, A8804-P0184)



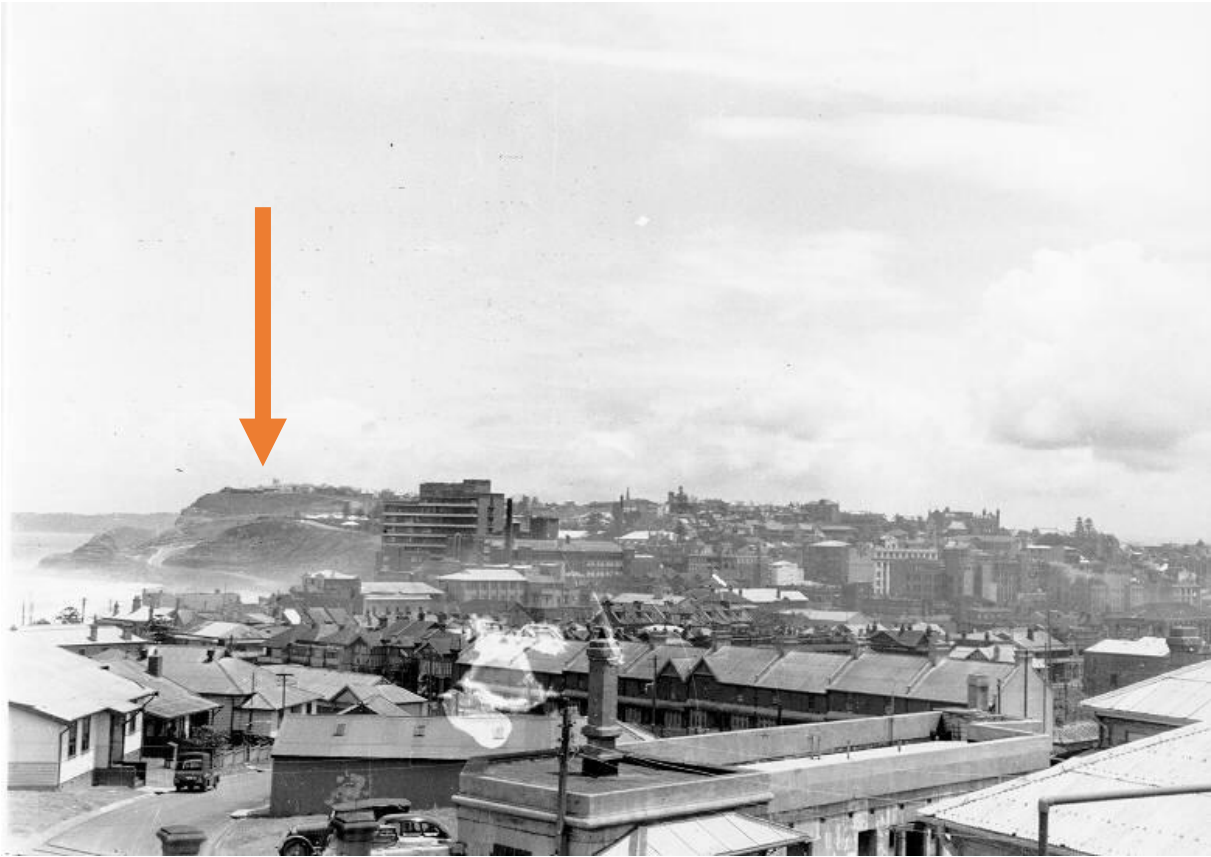


Figure 50. View of Newcastle from Fort Scratchley, 30 January 1954, [photographer unknown]. Shepherds Hill is visible in the distance to the left. (Source: Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 096 000084)



Figure 51. View over the mouth of the Hunter River towards Stockton and Worimi National Park. (Source: Newcastle port from Fort Scratchley, 1976, Graeme Andrews. City of Sydney Archives, A-00082419)



### 2.9.9. Phase 9: 1978-1986

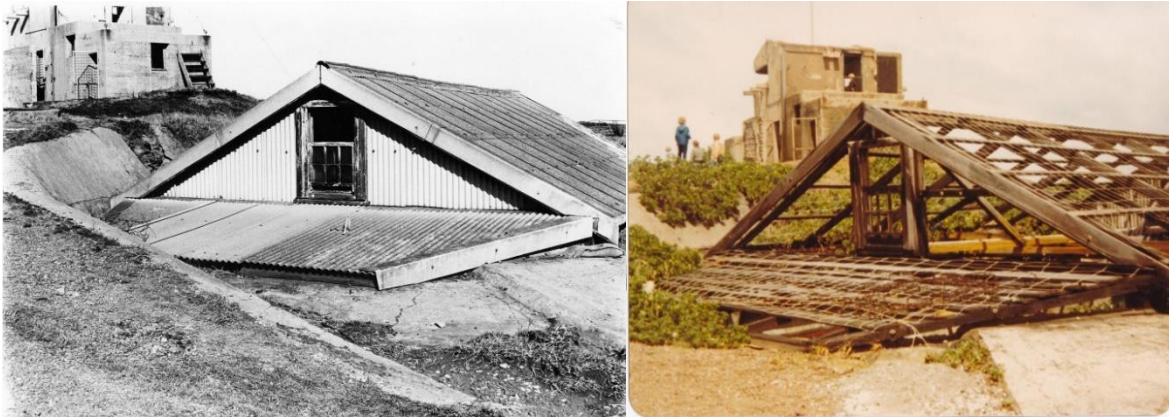


Figure 52. The western barbette was converted to an Artificer's Workshop at an unknown time and was covered with camouflage during the Second World War. The above ground roof structure is shown prior to its collapse (left, [nd]) and after its collapse (right, Jan 1983). (Source: Fort Scratchley Historical Society, accessed February 2024)

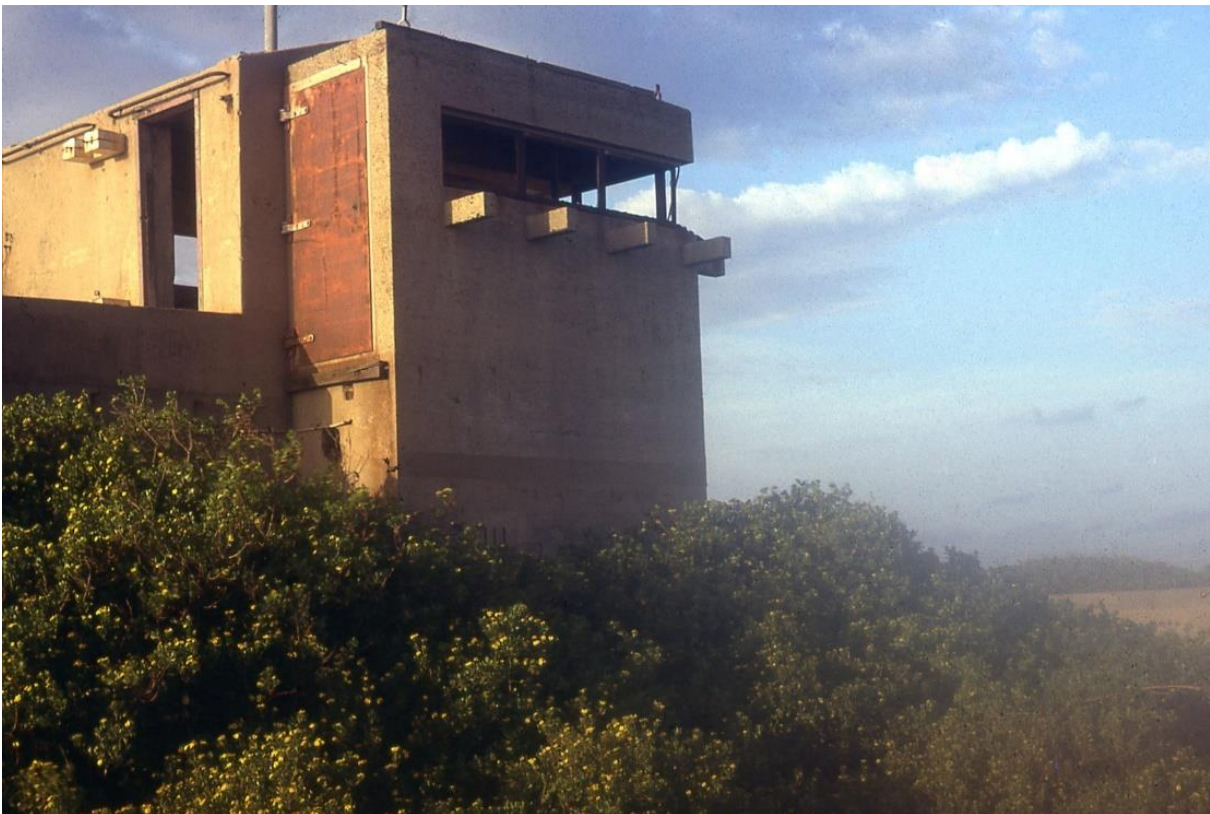


Figure 53. View of Battery Observation Post, looking north. (Source: Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, NSW, [1980s], [photographer unknown]. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, C918-0014)

### Built Fabric

This period of development consisted of the second phase of major reconstruction works. During this period, the tunnel system, gun emplacements and casemate batteries were cleaned out. However, this period is primarily associated with the reconstruction of the Commandant's Cottage, which involved substantial removal of deteriorated fabric. Replica doors and windows were constructed, floor boarding replaced, and new ceilings, cornices and fittings were installed. A section of the dry ditch was excavated and investigated by archaeologists. Flagstones were uncovered at the floor of the dry ditch.

## Landscape

Considerable undergrowth around the site was cleaned out in 1978.

## Views

As with the previous phase of development, ongoing development of the wider Newcastle area occurred and would have limited historic visual links from Fort Scratchley to other sites particularly within the CBD area, however, again, this would have been minimised due to Fort Scratchley's relative elevation.



Figure 54. Nobbys Head NSW from the summit of Fort Scratchley, [nd], [photographer unknown]. (Source: University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, C917-0013)

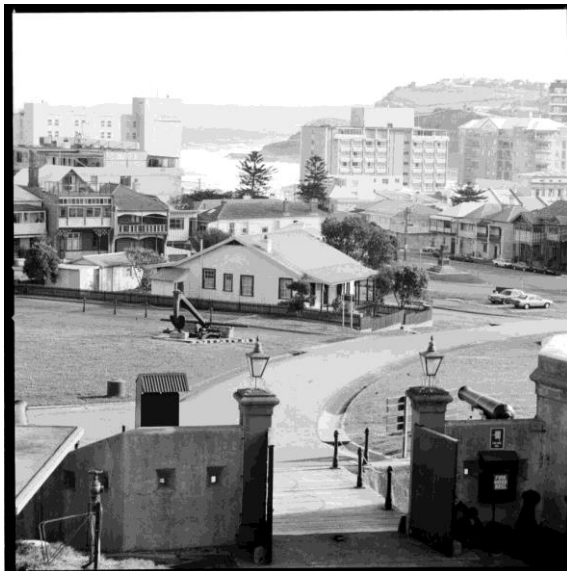


Figure 55. View towards Fort entrance from inner fort gates. (Source: [View from Fort Scratchley looking towards Nobby's Beach, NSW] [picture] / [Loui Seselja], 1999. National Library of Australia, PIC NL38590/21 frame 10 LOC PIC Album 1011/5)

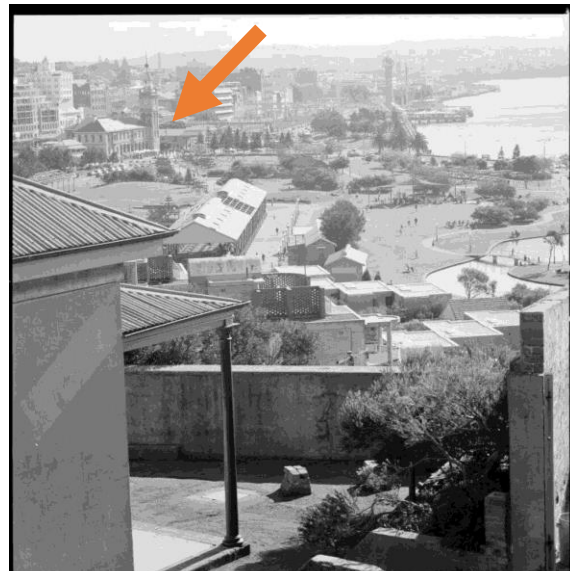


Figure 56. View over Foreshore Park from upper terrace of Fort Scratchley. Customs House is visible in the background (indicated by orange arrow). (Source: [View from Fort Scratchley looking west along foreshore Newcastle, NSW] [picture] / [Loui Seselja], 1999. National Library of Australia, PIC NL38590/22 frame 1 LOC PIC Album 1011/5)



## 2.9.10. Phase 10: 2005-2008

### Built Fabric

In 2004, it was decided that Fort Scratchley would be closed for conservation and reconstruction works and ownership of the site would later be transferred to the City of Newcastle Council. Like the major reconstruction works of the last two phases, this period of development was characterised by significant intervention into the fabric for a general upgrade of services, new site infrastructure, structural repairs, repairs to the tunnels including waterproofing the roofs, metals conservation, improved site access and the construction of two new buildings in the outer fort, the Hall and Workshop buildings. A detailed schedule of works undertaken during this time is included in the previous Heritage Management Plan prepared by Suturs Architects in association with Dawbin Architects.

### Landscape

Landscaping details are documented in the 2008 Heritage Management Plan. A brief overview of works include: a contaminated soils remediation project (capping and some removal of soil) including asbestos and lead paint removal (resulting in altered site levels), new asphalt paving in parade ground and around Nos 1 and 2 barbettes, new areas of turf laid in the dry ditch, and the earth bank above the rampart wall to the east of the Searchlight Directing Station was cut back, excavated and reformed.

### Views

Views from the inner fort towards the driveway procession would have changed slightly during this time due to the construction of the Hall and Workshop buildings, however, their form and scale are sympathetic with the rest of the Fort and were constructed on the remnants of the demolished Gunners' Mess and Transport Garage buildings. While continuing development has occurred in the Newcastle area, Fort Scratchley maintains strong view corridors to important sites and locations, as will be discussed in Section 3.5. Direct views to places such as Newcastle Customs House, Shepherds Hill Defence Group Military Installations, Newcastle CBD, Stockton and over the Tasman sea, can still be gained from Fort Scratchley today. However, ongoing development around the Newcastle CBD has slowly encroached on these views.



Figure 57. View from inner fort towards the outer fort and driveway procession. Shepherd's Hill is visible in the distance (indicated by orange arrow) (Source: Suturs Architects, 2008)



Figure 58. View of barracks complex buildings from the dry ditch. (Source: Suturs Architects, 2008)



## 2.10. Figures associated with the site

There are four primary figures associated with the design and construction of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site. Sirs Peter Scratchley and William Jervois developed the original preliminary concept and plans for the site, establishing its basic form and siting on top of Signal Hill. Gustavus A. Morrell from the Colonial Architect's Office would finalise designs for the gun emplacements to specifications by Scratchley and Jervois, and later, under the supervision of NSW Colonial Architect James Barnet, would refine and finalise designs for the barracks complex of buildings, including the Commandant's Cottage and Old Guardhouse buildings, in the Victorian Regency style. Barnet oversaw the construction of the barracks complex buildings until their completion in 1886 as he had done with the construction of the temporary fortifications in 1878.

### Sir Peter Scratchley (1835-1885)

The following biography is reproduced in full from R.B Joyce, 'Sir Peter Henry Scratchley (1835-1885)', *Australian Dictionary of Biography*, National Centre of Biography, Australian National University, <https://adb.anu.edu.au/biography/scratchley-sir-peter-henry-4552>, published first in hardcopy 1976, accessed online March 18, 2024.

*Sir Peter Henry Scratchley (1835-1885), military engineer and colonial administrator, was born on 24 August 1835 in Paris, thirteenth child of Dr James Scratchley, Royal Artillery, and his wife Maria, née Roberts. Educated in Paris where his father practised medicine, he became a cadet at the Royal Military Academy, Woolwich, England, under the patronage of his father's school friend Lord Palmerston. He had indifferent health, but with the help of private tutoring he passed out first in his class in February 1854. Commissioned on 21 April, he served in the Crimean war in the 4th Company, Royal Engineers, until 11 June 1856 and won the Crimean and Turkish medals. From July that year to October 1857 he was employed on engineering works at Portsmouth. He then served in the Indian mutiny, was mentioned in dispatches three times and was awarded the Indian war medal with clasp.*

*Promoted to captain in October 1859, Scratchley was given command of a detachment of engineers to erect in Melbourne defence works which he had designed. Arriving in the Ottawa on 13 June 1860 he reported on 21 September with detailed recommendations for the defence of Melbourne and Geelong. He considered the estimated cost of £81,200 as 'insignificant ... when compared with the revenue, wealth and security of the people of the colony', but lack of funds prevented almost all construction. He served as engineer and military storekeeper and became honorary lieutenant-colonel of the embryonic Victorian Artillery. He supported a delegation to form a unit of Victorian volunteer engineers and the corps was formed at a meeting on 7 November 1860. To the public regret of Victorian ministers, he returned to England late in 1863.*

*Scratchley commanded sappers at Portsmouth until October 1864. He had been promoted brevet major in March, then was in turn assistant inspector and inspector of works for the manufacturing department of the War Office. His experience included experiments in disposal of sewage for irrigation, improving the manufacture of hydrogen for balloons and training in assaying coins. He remained interested in Australian defences, claimed to have constantly considered Melbourne's security, and in 1865 wrote a report on South Australia's defence. He became a major on 5 July 1872, brevet lieutenant-colonel on 20 February 1874, lieutenant-colonel on 1 October 1877, and brevet colonel on 20 February 1879.*

*Scratchley returned to Australia on 8 March 1877 in the Tudor to join Sir William Jervois in advising the colonies on their defences. After Jervois was appointed governor of South Australia, Scratchley became commissioner of defences in 1878, covering in time all the six colonies and New Zealand. His plans were again thorough and were largely implemented, so that by 1885 he was satisfied that 'the colonies, excepting New Zealand, are fairly well prepared'. His ideas had changed little since 1860 although he was aware of technological improvements. He believed that land defence works should be near key ports, advocated torpedoes for offence and submarine mines for defence, supported the obstruction of shipping channels and argued for a limited number of paid volunteers, sufficient to repel minor invasions. At sea he favoured floating batteries and unarmoured gunboats with heavy guns, and opposed expensive ironclad vessels.*

*The clearest statements of Scratchley's views appear in the evidence he gave to the 1881 commission on New South Wales defences, of which he was vice-president and chairman of the military sub-committee. He retained his belief that threats to Australia were limited, because of British sea power:*

volunteer land forces with able officers were needed only 'to meet the contingency of the naval defences not meeting the enemy at sea'. Opposed to excessive copying of the system of training of British regulars, he argued that Australian fighting conditions would be different. Well aware of the difficulties of obtaining support for defence spending, he saw his central problem as the establishment of an effective force 'at the lowest possible cost'.

Scratchley retired from active military service on 1 October 1882 as honorary major-general, but was still employed by the Colonial Office as defence adviser for Australia. In April 1883 he visited England to consult the War Office on a general colonial defence plan and on 22 November 1884 was appointed special commissioner for the new British Protectorate of New Guinea, which was seen as an important shield for Australia. But he had little power and Sir Samuel Griffith argued that Scratchley had 'no legal jurisdiction and authority of any kind'. With few men and limited funds, he found his short term of office marked by fruitless requests for regular contributions from disgruntled colonies.

Knighted on 6 June 1885, Scratchley reached Port Moresby on 28 August and shaped policies sympathetic to the natives. He believed that they had been maltreated and justified their murders of European adventurers. Convinced that 'New Guinea must be governed for the natives and by the natives', he planned to appoint chiefs representing British authority and tried to protect native land rights. He discouraged private exploration but on his own second official journey to the mountain camp of H. O. Forbes, he contracted malaria and died at sea between Cooktown and Townsville on 2 December 1885. His body lay in state at his Melbourne home before being buried in St Kilda cemetery with military honours on 16 December. His remains were reinterred in the Old Charlton cemetery, Woolwich, England, on 30 April 1886.

At St John's Church, Heidelberg, Melbourne, on 13 November 1862 Scratchley had married Laura Lillas, sister of T. A. Browne, 'Rolf Boldrewood'. Two daughters and one son survived him, eventually to share his estate sworn for probate at £14,979. Fort Scratchley at Newcastle and Mount Scratchley in the Owen Stanley Range perpetuate his name. Though reserved, Scratchley gained respect from his unusually wide experience and conscientious effort. Despite his long, waxed military moustache, his achievements and ideas were sometimes unusual for a professional soldier who believed that 'war is a stern necessity'. He resisted the formation of a military caste in Australia, compromised with the popular wish for economy in defence expenditure and gave promise of a humanitarian attitude in New Guinea administration quite out of keeping with his orthodox image.

### **Sir William Jervois (1821-1897)**

The following biography is reproduced in full from Robin W. Winks, 'Sir William Francis Drummond Jervois (1821-1897)', *Australian Dictionary of Biography*, National Centre of Biography, Australian National University, <https://adb.anu.edu.au/biography/jervois-sir-william-francis-drummond-3856>, published first in hardcopy 1972, accessed online March 18, 2024.

*Sir William Francis Drummond Jervois (1821-1897), governor, was born on 10 September 1821 at Cowes, Isle Of Wight, the eldest son of General William Jervois (pronounced 'Jarvis') and his wife Elizabeth, née Maitland. Educated at Dr Burney's Academy near Gosport, he entered the Royal Military Academy at Woolwich and was commissioned second lieutenant in the Royal Engineers in 1839. He studied for two years in the School of Military Engineering at Chatham where his work at the drafting board was renowned for its excellence.*

*Jervois was posted to the Cape of Good Hope in 1841. He began the first survey of British Kaffraria and was twice cited for the quality of his work. He commanded a company of sappers and miners at Woolwich and Chatham in 1849-52 and then went to Alderney. He became the commanding royal engineer for the London military district in 1855, assistant inspector-general of fortifications at the War Office in 1856 and lieutenant-general and director of works for fortifications in 1862.*

*Especially interested in the American civil war, Jervois twice visited the United States to examine its defences and travelled three times to Canada. He sketched the harbour defences of Portland and Boston from rowing-boats while disguised as an artist. In 1865-74 he lectured on iron fortifications and inspected British defences from Gibraltar to the Andaman Islands. In 1863 he was made C.B. and in 1874 K.C.M.G.*

*In April 1875 Jervois was appointed governor of the Straits Settlements, succeeding Sir Andrew Clarke, and his decisions irrevocably committed Britain to a place on the Malay archipelago. He distrusted*

*Malays and had little respect for them; for the Chinese in Singapore he showed much sympathy and later strongly defended oriental migration to both Australia and New Zealand; in South Australia he was credited with having 'done much to modify unreasonable prejudice against Chinese labour'.*

*Early in 1877 Jervois was asked to survey the defences of Australia and New Zealand. Accompanied by Colonel Sir Peter Scratchley he completed his investigation of New South Wales defences by the end of May and planned to go to the other colonies. At Melbourne in June he was notified of 'promotion' as governor of South Australia, though in truth he was transferred because Lord Carnarvon at the Colonial Office was unhappy with his active interference on the Malay mainland. On 2 October Jervois arrived at South Australia from Melbourne in H.M.S. Sapphire and was sworn in. The colony was in political crisis; when the Colton ministry resigned Jervois won general approval by resisting pressures to dissolve parliament and (Sir) James Boucaut became premier. For the rest of his term Jervois was 'singularly free of political complications' although he clashed once with the House of Assembly over representation. His term also coincided with good rainfall and unprecedented extension of agricultural land. He laid the foundation stone of the University of Adelaide and of the new institute and art gallery in 1879. He turned the sod of the colony's first tramway, opened new railways and visited the far northern and southern limits of settlement, even buying land for himself.*

*He was a popular chairman of meetings of the Bible Society, the City Mission and other philanthropic institutions and lectured in aid of funds for the Young Men's Christian Association. He reported on South Australia's defences in December 1877, oversaw the construction of the new Houses of Parliament and a vice-regal summer house at Marble Hill, and promoted both horse-racing and Turkish bathing in Adelaide. Some critics complained that he did not entertain democratically enough, but he met them with characteristic forthrightness by making public his invitation lists. His wife Lucy, née Norsworthy, whom he had married in March 1850, founded a Young Women's Institute and was active in charity work.*

*In 1882 Jervois was made governor of New Zealand and left Adelaide in January 1883, the Register claiming that he was 'not only one of the ablest and most judicious but also one of the most deservedly popular of our Governors'. One of his three sons was appointed adjutant of the local military forces. His younger daughter was married in the colony. He left New Zealand in March 1889. In 1892 he revisited South Australia and New Zealand and became colonel-commandant of the Royal Engineers in 1893. He died on 17 August 1897 after a carriage accident and was buried near Virginia Water, Surrey. His many published papers and lectures include *Defences of Great Britain and her dependencies* (1880) and *Colonisation* (1882). His name is remembered by a bridge in Adelaide and by mountains and a mine in Central Australia.*

### **James Barnet (1827-1904)**

The following biography is reproduced in full from D.I. McDonald, 'James Johnstone Barnet (1827-1904)', *Australian Dictionary of Biography*, National Centre of Biography, Australian National University, <https://adb.anu.edu.au/biography/barnet-james-johnstone-2939>, published first in hardcopy 1969, accessed online March 18, 2024.

*James Johnstone Barnet (1827-1904), architect, was born at Almericlose, Arbroath, Scotland, son of Thomas Barnet, builder, and his wife Mary, née McKay. After education at the local high school he went to London in 1843 and was apprenticed to a builder. He then studied drawing and design under W. Dyce, R.A. and architecture with C. J. Richardson, F.R.I.B.A., and became clerk of works to the Worshipful Company of Fishmongers. On 22 July 1854 he married Amy, daughter of John and Elizabeth Gosling; they sailed for Sydney and arrived in December. He engaged in building operations before he became clerk of works at the University of Sydney. In 1860 he joined the Colonial Architect's Office; two years later he became its acting head and in 1865 colonial architect; he held the position until 1890 when the office was reorganized.*

*Barnet was responsible for the building of defence works at Port Jackson, Botany Bay and Newcastle, court-houses, lock-ups, police stations and post offices throughout New South Wales and several lighthouses including the Macquarie Lighthouse on South Head, which replaced an earlier one designed by Francis Greenway. In Sydney he designed and supervised the construction of several important public buildings: a new wing to the Australian Museum, the General Post Office, Colonial Secretary's Office, Public Works and Lands Buildings, Customs House, Public Library, the Medical School at the University of Sydney and the Callan Park Lunatic Asylum. He was also responsible for additions to the*



Tarban Creek Asylum and the maintenance of other public buildings. The total cost of public works carried out or in progress under his direction to 1881 was £3,598,568 for 1490 projects.

When the Duke of Edinburgh visited Sydney in 1868 Barnet was given charge of arrangements for the royal reception and in 1879 was responsible for the design and erection of the Sydney International Exhibition building on five acres of the Botanical Gardens. The design was prepared and the work completed in nine months with the aid of night shifts using the first electric light in Sydney. Preparation of 412 drawings and of all accounts and payment of moneys as well as oversight of the work were part of Barnet's responsibility. Whilst the work was in progress he was continually attacked in parliament and in the press. As an indication of its censure parliament disallowed his forage allowance in 1879. A sum of £50,000 had been voted for the project but the final cost was £184,570. Barnet explained the increased cost as the result of hurried planning and the use of more durable material than originally intended. The building 'took the public taste' and when the exhibition ended he was paid a gratuity of £500, an amount he considered totally inadequate.

The new wing for the Australian Museum was intended for a museum of natural history and a sculpture gallery. In 1873 the management of Gerard Krefft as curator was considered by the trustees to be highly unsatisfactory and on 24 February 1874 a select committee of the Legislative Assembly was appointed to investigate. Despite Barnet's denials it reported that the old building was satisfactory although in poor repair, but the new wing was 'extremely defective' with 'abundant evidence of the architect's desire to subordinate utility to ornament'; in no circumstances should the colonial architect be permitted to continue his mistakes in the uncompleted work. In spite of the committee's findings Barnet was soon acclaimed as an architect of skill and imagination. On 1 September at the official opening of the General Post Office the postmaster-general, (Sir) Saul Samuel, paid a glowing tribute to his work. The first contracts for the foundation and basement had been let in February 1866 but were delayed by negotiations for extending the site and the needs of urgent defence work. To make the most of the narrow site an extra storey was added, mezzanine galleries were built above the ground floor and the main building extended over an arcade built above the footpath. Pyrmont sandstone, in blocks 'of a magnitude never before attempted in these colonies', was used and fireproof concrete 'of original composition' formed the vaulted dome ceilings.

For decoration of the Pitt Street frontage Barnet planned carvings which would portray selected arts, sciences, and customs of the day. In 1883 these came under criticism from the postmaster-general, William Trickett. The inevitable board of inquiry commended Barnet's intention but complained that the carvings were not a faithful record, approaching 'far more to the unnatural and burlesque than ... to the real', an opinion which made Barnet doubt the artistic taste of his judges. The subject was dropped although occasional notices in the press referred to the entertainment of visitors by the 'grotesque' carvings.

In addition to other official duties, Barnet sat on the commission set up in 1870 to plan the colony's defence. More defence works were recommended for Port Jackson and Barnet was directed to build new batteries and barracks. His work, without 'any technical professional aid', was highly praised by Sir William Jervis and (Sir) Peter Scratchley in 1877. On 16 July 1889 the defence work was removed from Barnet's control and a military works branch of the Public Works Department was created with Lieutenant-Colonel F. R. de Wolski as director. The earlier close relationship between the military and Barnet deteriorated rapidly, partly because of de Wolski's outspoken condemnation of Barnet's ability and partly because of his persistence on tactical delay in handing over plans and documents for defence work. For some time work at Bare Island battery, Botany Bay, had been criticized and rumours of incompetence and dishonest workmanship persisted. On 1 July 1890 a royal commission was appointed to investigate the letting of contracts and to report on the work already completed. The commissioners found that much of the construction was below standard: the colonial architect's supervision had not been adequate, specifications were altered without approval and expenditure insufficiently controlled. Barnet's evidence contradicted that of his subordinates which the commission accepted more readily than his own. Whatever deficiencies had occurred, and there were plenty, were Barnet's sole responsibility; he was found guilty of gross indifference towards his duties and of insubordination to the minister for public works.

Although the minister saved Barnet from further punishment, the commission's censure was a regrettable end to a distinguished career. For his part Barnet thought that the commissioners' report was an 'unseemly, cruel, and spiteful exhibition of silly persecution and injustice' and believed that he

could have made a satisfactory explanation if given the opportunity; he was also convinced that the commission had been influenced by de Wolski who by invitation had attended many of its meetings and been permitted to comment on the evidence.

*In his architectural work Barnet had been strongly influenced by the Italian Renaissance, but some of his buildings were on poor sites. He had no sympathy for new styles of architecture which were becoming fashionable in Sydney at the end of the century and tended to ape American trends. He was equally critical of domestic architecture cluttered with useless ornamentation and 'surmounted with blazing red tiles from France'. As colonial architect for twenty-five years he had an important influence on colonial architecture; his public buildings were well built and well designed and stood as a memorial to his ability. References to his work are sprinkled throughout the Sydney Morning Herald in 1863-1904. In 1899 he published Architectural Work in Sydney, New South Wales, 1788-1899.*

*Barnet died on 16 December 1904 and was buried in the Presbyterian section at Rookwood cemetery where his wife had been interred about 1890. He was survived by four daughters and three sons, two of whom practised their father's profession.*

### **Gustavus A. Morrell (Arrived in Sydney 1863-1888)**

Gustavus Alphonse Morrell was a renowned civil engineer and architect in the Sydney area, known for his architectural output during his time at the NSW Colonial Architect's Office and as a partner at the firm Morrell & Kemp Architects.<sup>107</sup> Morrell was heavily involved in the design and construction of defence works in Sydney and Newcastle in collaboration with Scratchley and Jervois, often serving as their draughtsman on projects such as Fort Scratchley and Bare Island Fort. Following their collaboration on the defence works in NSW, Sir William Jervois urged Morrell to go to England and accept an appointment in connection with the British War Office while at the time occupying a prominent position with the Roads Department. However, he soon left his position at the Roads Department and began a private architectural and engineering firm, where he was later joined by his partner Mr John Edward Kemp who would later design the heritage-listed Paddington Town Hall building.<sup>108</sup>

Morrell's architectural output include:

- Denison Bridge c. 1870, Bathurst, NSW
- The Swifts c. 1882, Darling Point, Sydney
- Rona c. 1883, Bellevue Hill, Sydney
- Her Majesty's Theatre c. 1887, Pitt Street, Sydney (demolished 1933).

<sup>107</sup> "Obituary," Sydney Morning Herald, August 16, 1888, 11.

<sup>108</sup> "Morell and Kemp," The Dictionary of Sydney, State Library of NSW, accessed March 18, 2024, [https://dictionaryofsydney.org/organisation/morell\\_and\\_kemp#ref-uuid=8f2d946a-e80d-f8e9-f963-072f092bedae](https://dictionaryofsydney.org/organisation/morell_and_kemp#ref-uuid=8f2d946a-e80d-f8e9-f963-072f092bedae).

### 3. PHYSICAL EVIDENCE



Figure 59. Fort Scratchley as seen from cnr Nobbys Road and Fort Drive. (Source: CPH, 2023)

#### 3.1. Setting

The Fort Scratchley Historic Site consists of approximately 3.63Ha occupying the superior position on top of Signal Hill, offering expansive vistas across Nobbys Head and Macquarie Pier, the Hunter River and the Newcastle CBD. Following early settlement of the area in the period shortly after the arrival of the First Fleet, the area surrounding the subject site has been intensely developed, with a combination of colonial and contemporary structures to the west towards the CBD and the connection of Nobbys Island to the mainland with the construction of Macquarie Pier. A natural steep topography and cliff bordering Fort Drive and Shortland Esplanade forms a natural boundary to the northern section of the site. Fronting the junction of Fort Drive and Nobbys Road, a short driveway provides access to car parking facilities adjacent to the Master Gunner's Cottage (now the offices for the Fort Scratchley Historical Society), the Hall and the Workshop buildings.

The Fort Scratchley Historic Site comprises several sub-complexes of buildings and structures which are arranged in descending order around Signal Hill as follows:

- the gun emplacements, Battery Observation post and associated fortress structures and underground tunnels;
- the Commandant's Cottage;
- the Barracks and associated buildings on the lower apron of the inner fort;
- the Hall and Workshop; and
- the old Master Gunner's Cottage (now the Fort Scratchley Historical Society Office).

A publicly accessible playground exists opposite to the car parking space on the driveway leading up to the fort's gates. While a number of different numbering systems have been used throughout the site's history, the site map (Figure 60) utilises a building numbering system borrowed from the site map currently found on on-site interpretation.

#### 3.2. Landscape

The site sits atop Signal Hill which is elevated approximately thirty meters above sea level, on the southern side of the mouth of the Hunter River. Over time, the hill's shape has changed significantly. Initially, the site was discovered due to the exposed coal seams on its eastern side which led to the establishment of coal mines underneath the hill, creating tunnels that were later filled in the 1880s during the fort construction.



In the 1820s, convicts built earthen mounds for defence purposes. Then, in the 1870-1890s, a more substantial permanent fortification was built on top of the hill according to a design by Scratchley and Jervois. This changed the hill's appearance, and upgrades have continued since then. The summit housed gun placements overlooking the river mouth, mainly facing east and north. Over time, it held both military buildings and navigation aids. The hill's natural steepness on the north and east sides was reinforced, while the gentler south side was terraced for parades and buildings. The Commandant's Cottage, built in the 1880s, sat on the highest terrace to the west, while barracks and other buildings were on the lower terrace, enclosed by a wall and dry ditch to the southwest. Access to the fort was only through a bridge to the south.

Beyond the fort, temporary structures were added, mostly military-related. Before that, pilots' houses surrounded the west side, later becoming homes for married couples.



Legend	
1	Master Gunner's Cottage (1926)
2	New Guardhouse (1940)
3	The Laboratory (1886)
4	Searchlight Generator Room (c. 1949-1945)
5	Old Guardhouse (1886)
6	Canteen (1886)
7	Barracks (1886)
8	NCOs' Quarters (1886)
9	Commandant's Cottage (1886)
10	Servant's Quarters (1886)
11	Western Barbette (c. 1882)
12	Battery Observation Post (c. 1914)
13	No. 1 Gun (c. 1911)
14	No. 2 Gun (c. 1911)
15	Artillery Store (1882)
16	Tunnels (Magazine Level 1882) (Tunnel Level 1911)
17	Mine Firing Station (1889)
18	Searchlight Directing Station (c. 1940-1943)

Figure 60. Fort Scratchley site map showing numbering system. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)

### 3.3. Physical Description

The descriptions within the following sections refer to the number system annotated in Figure 60.

#### 3.3.1. Outer Fort

##### Master Gunner's Cottage (Building 1)

The Master Gunner's Cottage is the only extant structure of a group of buildings constructed to provide living quarters to married officers. Previously, the married quarters buildings were located southeast of the Fort. It is a weatherboard cottage with a corrugated iron gable roof standing in a large yard. It was constructed around 1926. There is a verandah on the building's symmetrical northern (primary) elevation. Three single leafed panelled doors with twelve glazed panes in the upper half (each with a separate screen door on the exterior), open onto the raised verandah with timber floor finish. The cottage consists of four rooms, a small bathroom and kitchen in the main block. The laundry and toilet are located in a lean-to extension on the south side of the cottage. A more recent small lean-to extension is positioned to the east. It is currently used as storage space. The building was extensively renovated during the 2007-2008 refurbishment works. The cottage roof was replaced in the 1970s and a single chimney is located on the north end of the gable roof. The present garden picket fence is a replacement of an earlier fence system.



Figure 61. View of the Hall and Workshop buildings from the outer fort driveway. (Source: CPH, 2024)





Figure 62. View of Master Gunner's Cottage from inner fort gates. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 63. Master Gunner's Cottage, northern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 64. Signage at the Master Gunner's Cottage. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 65. Master Gunner's Cottage, southern elevation, showing rear wing additions. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 66. Master Gunner's Cottage rear garden with Bofors 40 mm gun used at the Fort from 1962. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 67. Interior view of Master Gunner's Cottage, Administration Room. (Source: CPH, 2024)



## The Hall and Workshop

The Workshop and Hall are recent additions, constructed during 2005-2008 when ownership of the site transferred from the Commonwealth Government to the City of Newcastle Council. In anticipation of the transfer, the Council stipulated that the site should support revenue-generating activities beyond museum operations. As a result, the project scope included the construction of the Hall, a multipurpose centre with public amenities including a café. The new building is located at the former practice parade ground, south of the remnant foundation wall of the previously demolished weatherboard Mess Building. The Hall and surrounding areas have been landscaped, offering a new facility equipped for functions, catering, café services, and visitor amenities.

The Workshop building takes the place of the former Transport Garage, which was demolished during the 2005-2008 works. Originally associated with the post-war period of the Army's occupation of the Fort, the new Workshop building is constructed on the original floor slab of the Transport Garage and maintains the prior building's form, ridge height, and roof pitch. The new Workshop serves as a space for site maintenance, accommodating movable items, new installations, and artefact conservation. Additionally, the building provides storage for site maintenance equipment.



Figure 68. View of the Hall and Workshop buildings from the outer fort. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 69. View of the Hall building, looking east. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 70. View of the Hall and inner fort gates, looking north. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 71. View towards Tasman Sea from the Hall. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 72. Workshop building, northwestern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2024)

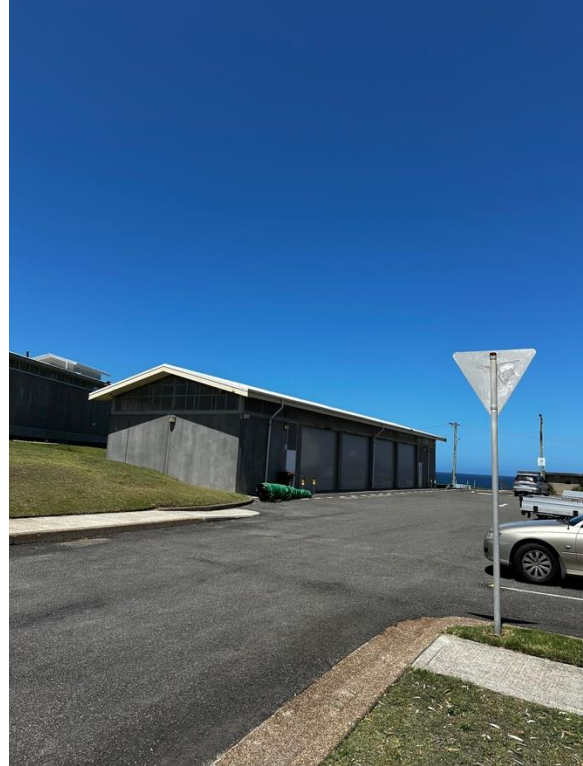


Figure 73. View of the Workshop building, looking east. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 74. Workshop building, southwestern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2024)

### Fortification walls

The fortification wall lining the dry ditch is a concrete structure approximately 150 feet in length and runs along the southern periphery of the inner fort of the Fort Scratchley site. It is approximately 2 feet in thickness and stands to a height of 10 feet on its interior aspect. Its lower section serves a dual purpose, acting as both a structural support and a retaining wall within the confines of the dry ditch. The surface of the fortification wall is characterised by a series of loop holes (embrasures) that run the length of the walls which were used as firing positions in the event of landward attack. Where the wall forms the back of the NCOs' Ablutions and Old Guardhouse buildings, it is glazed. (Figure 75 and Figure 76).



The entrance to the Fort is characterised by a bridge flanked by a pair of columns with simple capitals and copper lamps mounted on top. These lamps were reconstructed from based on the original profile and are connected to electricity, using mantles to simulate the effect of the original gas lamps.

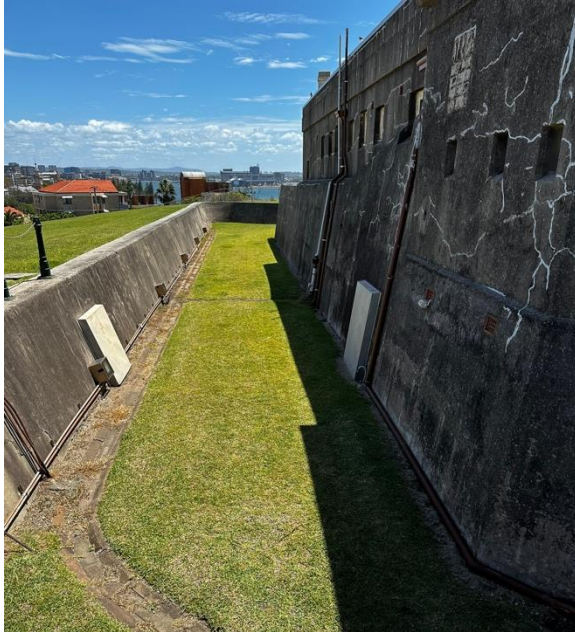


Figure 75. View of dry ditch and fortification wall, looking west. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 76. View of dry ditch and fortification wall, looking east towards the inner fort gates and bridge. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 77. View of dry ditch and fortification wall, looking southeast. This section of the wall has been rendered and scored to simulate stonework (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 78. View of fortification wall interior from the Barrack building terrace. (Source: CPH, 2024)



### Mine Firing Station (Building 17)

The below description has been adapted from the 2008 Heritage Management Plan as the Mine Firing Station is currently inaccessible due to vandalism concerns.

The Mine Firing Station is thought to have been constructed during the 1889-1892 modification works to Fort Scratchley. This structure was important as a submarine minefield was laid in the mouth of the Hunter River, an essential element in the nineteenth century design of Australia's coastal defences. It is located west of the barracks complex outside of the Fort's walls. It is a partially buried installation accessed down a flight of slate steps. It consists of two rooms: the rest room and mine firing position. The larger room contained the batteries which provided the electrical link to the mines which were detonated electrically by hand from the station. The larger room is rectangular in shape with a wrought iron railed entrance door. Remnants of bronze fittings indicate that care was taken to prevent sparks and fire. A flight of steps in the north wall gives access to a smaller irregularly shaped room which has an observation slit overlooking the river. A slate bench, thought to have been used for the depression range finder is the only remaining fitting in the room. The ceiling of this room comprises steel beams supporting a concrete slab. The larger room has a concrete ceiling. Several examples of wartime pencil drawings and graffiti remain on the whitewashed walls, and include portraits in military attire.



*Figure 79. View to Mine Firing Station entrance from the dry ditch. (Source: CPH, 2024)*



*Figure 80. View down Mine Firing Station stairs. The entrance door is currently welded shut due to vandalism concerns. (Source: CPH, 2024)*

### Searchlight Directing Station (Building 18)

The Searchlight Directing Station is a rendered reinforced concrete structure with a flat slab concrete roof and square layout. It shares similar external projections to the Battery Observation Post. The structure currently does not have any window units installed in the bay nor any doors, although evidence remains of former fittings in the entrance and on the walls. The building previously supported the searchlight mountings and was used as a directing station during and after the Second World War.



Figure 81. View of Searchlight Directing Station, looking southeast. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 82. Searchlight Directing Station, eastern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 83. View of Searchlight Directing Station roof structure. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 84. View towards Tasman Sea from the interior of the Searchlight Directing Station, looking southeast. (Source: CPH, 2024)



### 3.3.2. Inner Fort (East)

#### New Guardhouse (Building 2)

The New Guardhouse is a rectangular rendered brick building that was built as a secure store after the Second World War. It is similar in layout to the Original Guardhouse building (**Building 5**) though larger in size. It has two strong rooms at the rear of the structure and is currently used as a storage and display space for military artefacts, such as uniforms, medals, and artillery shells. The two rooms at the rear of the building each have a high-level deadlight window with security bars and the timber strip flooring remains exposed. Doors to these rooms have been clad with metal sheeting on both faces. The primary internal circulation space features sash windows with security bars and carpeted floors. The entrance includes a single framed, ledged and battened door, with a hasp and staple locking mechanism. The exterior of the structure features a cantilevered concrete slab verandah supported by steel posts. Embrasures have been included along the south facing parapet.



Figure 85. New Guardhouse, western elevation. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 86. New Guardhouse, eastern elevation showing parapet with embrasures. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 87. Interior view of New Guardhouse, looking southeast. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 88. Interior view of New Guardhouse, looking south. (Source: CPH, 2023)



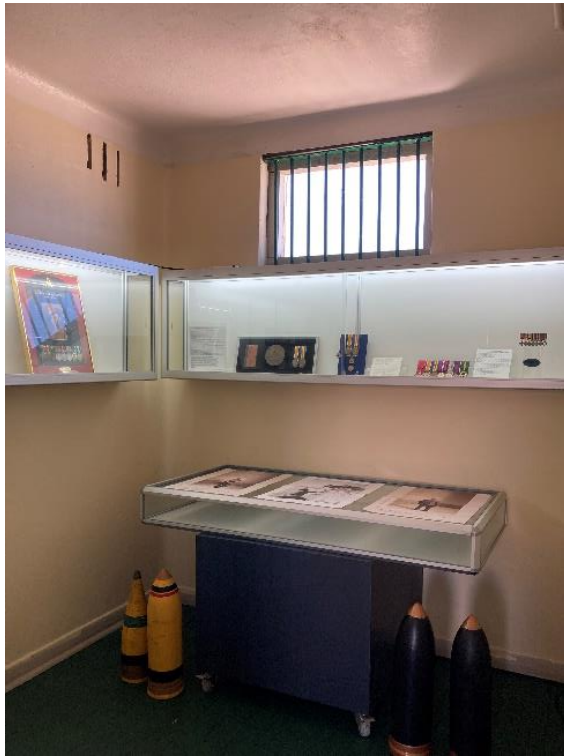


Figure 89. Interior view of northern strong room. Space is now used as a museum space by the Fort Scratchley Historical Society. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 90. Interior view of southern strong room. Space is now used as additional storage by Fort Scratchley Historical Society. (Source: CPH, 2023)

### Laboratory (Building 3)

The Laboratory building is a rectangular rendered reinforced concrete building with a flat roof and concrete floor. Due to the building's use as a space to make up charges and pack shells, it is located away from the main accommodation buildings. The façade features a niche with an operable shutter which was designed to allow lamps to be tended to from the outside and to allow daylight in through a fixed glass pane on the interior. The Laboratory building is accessed via a single armour plated door on the southern elevation. A horizontal band spans the perimeter of the building. The building features high level openings to the rear that have been in-filled with bricks.

The entrance door opens onto a corridor, which gives access to the central laboratory room via an entrance way adjacent the northern side of the building. The central laboratory room is a rectangular space that is adjoined by a smaller room which was probably used as a store. The central space is lit by a pair of windows that have been installed with a fixed glass pane and operable steel shutters.



Figure 91. View of Laboratory building, looking southeast. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 92. View of rear of Laboratory building. The ventilation units were in-filled with bricks at an unknown time. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 93. Entrance corridor to Laboratory building. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 94. Interior view of central laboratory room, looking northwest. (Source: CPH, 2023)

### Gunners' Ablutions

The Gunners' Ablutions are located in between the Laboratory (**Building 3**) and Searchlight Directing Station (**Building 4**) buildings. The building is a rectangular rendered structure with a corrugated metal (or terracotta tiled) gabled roof and ogee profiled gutters. The upper portion of the gabled end features timber weatherboard and louvred gable vents. The building contains from west to east: two lavatory rooms and a urinal room. Each room is accessed by a ledged and battened door with a slate threshold. The rear room has five urinals along the northern side of the building, separated by slate panels, and five toilet pans on the southern side again separated by slate panels. The high level cisterns are supported by ornate cast iron brackets, with ornate supports are largely intact, and The rear of the building features a corbelled detail either side of the rear wall. There are windows on the western and eastern elevations. Although varying in size, each window has fixed louvers with security bars fixed externally to the window units and projecting sills.



Figure 95. View of the Gunners' Ablutions looking northeast.  
(Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 96. View of the Gunners' Ablutions looking southeast.  
(Source: CPH, 2023)





Figure 97. Interior view of the northern room. The high level cisterns remain intact. The slate partition walls are clearly visible. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 98. Urinal space on southern side. (Source: CPH, 2023)

### Searchlight Generator Room (Building 4)

The Searchlight Generator Room is an unpretentious rectangular flat roofed structure constructed from reinforced concrete. The southern elevation features a steel double-leaf door. The structure also includes a double hung sash window unit and four large ventilation openings with metal cowls. The structure abuts the loopholed wall that surrounds the spans the perimeter of the lower apron of the inner fort. The plinth on which the generator is mounted remains intact from its original construction.

The structure was constructed during the Second World War to house the searchlight generator and is associated with the Searchlight Directing Station (**Building 18**) and searchlights which were previously located north and southwest of the Fort, outside the fortress walls.



Figure 99. Searchlight Generator Room signage. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 100. View of Searchlight Generator Room exterior, looking north. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 101. View of the Searchlight Generator Room and dry ditch wall, looking southeast. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 102. Interior view of Searchlight Generator Room. The generator plinth remains intact. (Source: CPH, 2023)

## Barracks Complex

In general, the buildings comprising the barracks complex are typical structures of the late-Victorian period and are demonstrative of the Victorian Regency style, having regular rectilinear arrangements, cement rendered solid brick walls (to simulate ashlar brickwork), timber framed windows and doors (with transom lights), restrained classical mouldings, and verandahs supported by cast iron columns with simple beaded panels attached to the eaves. The eaves line also feature a deep fascia board below the beaded panel giving the impression of a substantial beam at eaves level. Above the verandahs are a series of louvered or glazed clerestory windows around the sides of the buildings which face the courtyard, and on the southern and western sides of the Barracks building (**Building 7**). The timber framed shallow pitched hipped roofs are clad in corrugated iron. The buildings feature minimal ornamentation except for the high-level sills above the verandah roofs, the cast iron verandah columns, and the simply profiled chimneys whose crowns are made up of a simple arrangement of rendered rows of corbelled bricks.

The complex itself consists of a three bedroom Commandant's Cottage (**Building 9**) on the upper terrace and an L shaped arrangement of buildings (**Buildings 6, 7, and 8**) linked by verandahs or narrow passages on the lower terrace. The Old Guardhouse (**Building 5**) encloses the central barracks' courtyard which was extended during World War II to provide additional communications capabilities to the site. The NCOs' Quarters (**Building 8**) only joins the verandah system at its southwest corner adjacent to the Barracks (**Building 7**). The courtyard and westerly faces of the buildings are surrounded by an 8 foot wide verandah with concrete floor finish. Verandah posts are cast iron replicas (c. 1983) from the Commandant's Cottage (using slightly shorter moulds). Circulation about the barracks complex is achieved via the narrow passageways between buildings with little internal circulation within individual structures.

The spatial configuration of the complex is of significance because of the way the enclosed space of the Fort was accommodated in its design and because of the requirement for self sufficiency in the event of siege. Notwithstanding the limited space available for accommodations, Barnett and Morrell's design manages to fulfil a composition with balanced proportions when viewed from the entrance gate or from a distance. The relationship between the various structures' roofs also contributes to an interesting roofscape which is visible from outside the Fort and from the parade ground.

The joinery of the barracks complex is generally uniform throughout. Windows are evenly spaced and are generally double hung sash units with an operable bottom sash of six panes each. Most of the window feature a projected tapering sill (although the sills are flush with the walls on the Barracks building - **Building 5**). Internal doors generally have four panelled leaves with recessed mouldings on the inner panels, however, the external door leaves vary with some having mouldings, some flush, framed, battened, or ledged. All the barracks complex buildings feature a shallow plinth at the base of the perimeter walls and at the roof framing springing level above.

The interior and exterior of the barracks suffered considerable deterioration following the end of the Australian Army's occupation of Fort Scratchley in 1972. A significant reconstruction effort was undertaken in 1977 to reconstruct and restore the barracks complex buildings to a suitable state. Since the 2008 Heritage Management Plan was prepared, Fort Scratchley has been reopened for use as a museum space and public recreation area. On-site interpretation aids visitors interpret the fabric as it has been reconstructed but also how it has been used over time.



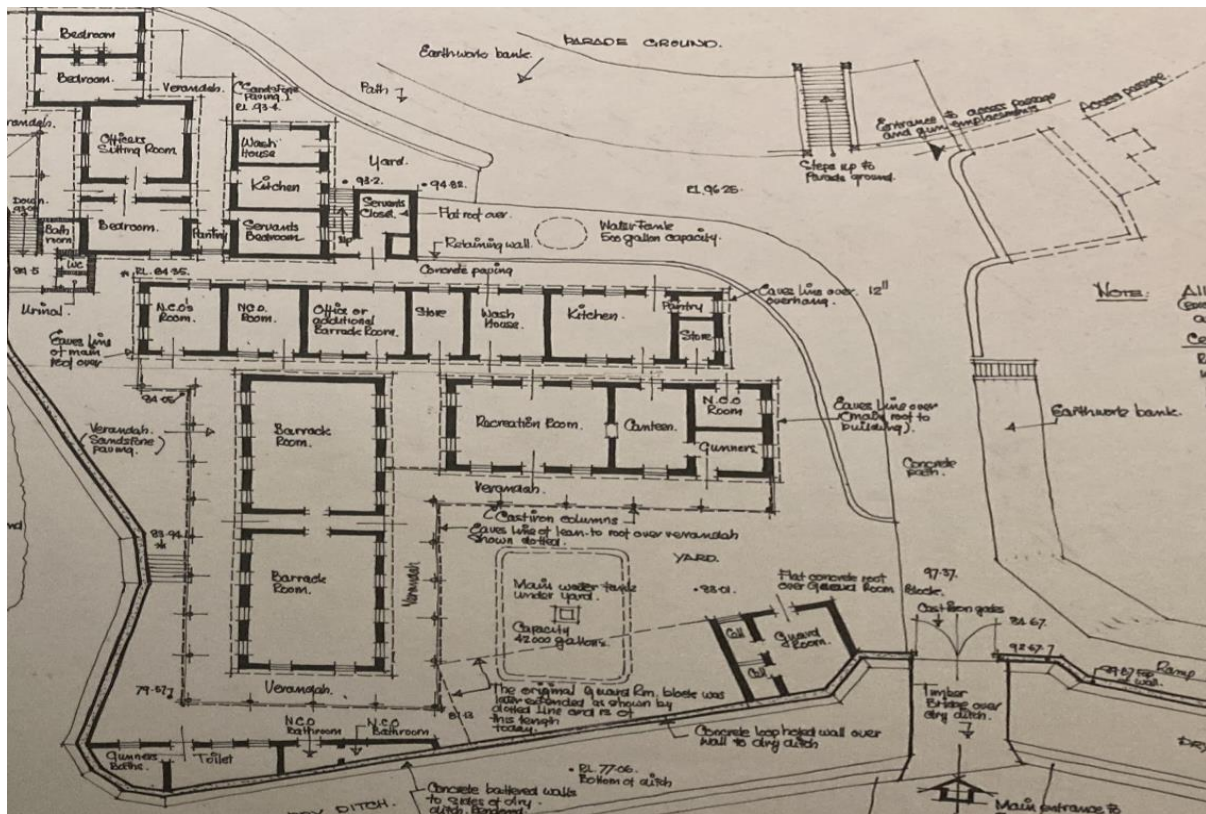


Figure 103. Plan of Fort Scratchley Barracks Complex. (Source: Ian B.F. Wyness, September 1965)

### Old Guardhouse (Building 5)

The Old Guardhouse is located immediately west of the inner fort gates. It is a rendered brick building that displays elements of Regency design with a parapet characterised by a projected moulding above a shallow horizontal band, demarcating the original structure. It utilises the inner dry ditch wall as its rear wall. It was originally square in plan and featured a central room adjoined by two cells with a central fireplace to heat the main room. At present, the southern cell room can only be entered through a doorway in the northern cell. The floors are presently carpeted in the main room but uncovered in the cell. The flat roof features a central chimney and is protected by a membrane. The cantilevered verandah facing the central barrack's courtyard is a reconstruction (c. 1981) based on the original detail. It has a concave profile corrugated steel roof. Sash windows to the original structure feature 3x2 panes per sash and metal shutters. Several glazed loopholes overlook the dry ditch. The forecourt of the verandah is paved with flagged sandstone which is unique to this building as other verandahs in the barracks complex have been concrete paved with a stone nosing detail.

During the Second World War the Old Guardhouse was converted to a communications centre (evidenced by the plaque above its westernmost door on the northern façade) following the construction of the New Guardhouse (**Building 2**). At this time, it was extended to the west with an additional flat roof structure to provide additional stores and ablutions. The stores feature a large switchboard and meters, and the signals room provides on-site interpretation for the communications work that occurred at Fort Scratchley during the War. In addition, separate additional ablution spaces were also provided in the western extension of the building, which have been converted to visitor lavatory facilities. The casement styled windows in the western addition generally have tapering sills.



Figure 104. View of Old Guardhouse looking west. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 105. WWII Extension to Old Guardhouse building.. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 106. Interior view of Old Guardhouse, showing central fireplace and a cell. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 107. Interior view of Old Guardhouse, looking south. (Source: CPH, 2023)





Figure 108. Switchboard and meters in the central stores space. The floors are tiled. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 109. View of extension to Old Guardhouse showing Signals Centre signage. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 110. Interior view of Signals Centre. The space is currently used for museum interpretation. The floors are presently carpeted. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 111. Original ablutions in the western addition have been upgraded for use as visitor lavatory facilities. (Source: CPH, 2023)



### Canteen (Building 6)

The Canteen building forms the northern border of the barrack's courtyard. It is a smaller hipped roof structure, that connects to the verandah system along its southern façade. Internally, the Canteen building consists of a recreation room, a canteen, an NCOs' room and Gunners' room. There is limited circulation throughout the building, although the Gunners' room was formerly connected to the canteen by an internal door (since replaced with a serving hatch that has been filled in).

The recreation room is a large space. It features sash windows with 3x2 panes per sash and clerestory louvred vents aligned above on each of its three external walls. The recreation room is accessible via a central door on both its northern and southern sides. There is a fireplace on the western wall. The Gunners' and NCOs' rooms are similar in layout. They also feature sash windows with 3x2 panes per sash with clerestory louvred vents aligned above and a corrugated metal ceiling. The canteen room is entered through a northern doorway and is lit by a single 3x2 pane double hung window unit with clerestory louvred vent aligned above. There is a sink below the southernmost serving hatch. The two serving hatches on the eastern side of the room are separated by a central wall of rendered brick. The serving hatches that formerly opened into the recreation room, NCOs' and Gunners' rooms have since been filled in and painted.



Figure 112. View of Canteen, looking north. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 113. Canteen, eastern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 114. View to NCOs' Quarters, with Canteen pictured on the right. Circulation within and between buildings is mostly achieved through narrow passageways. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 115. Internal view of the recreation room, looking south. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 116. Internal view of the recreation room, looking west. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 117. Internal view of the recreation room, looking east. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 118. Serving hatch located in Gunners' room. It was filled in at an unknown date. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 119. Internal view of the canteen room. Note the two serving hatches which have been filled. (Source: CPH, 2023)

## Barracks (Building 7)

Like the other structures comprising the complex, the Barracks building is a hipped roof structure of the same features as the Canteen and NCOs' Quarters. It is of similar size to the Canteen building and features a verandah on three sides of the building. The verandah floor along its southern end is raised considerably above ground level and overlooks the NCOs' Ablutions (which are built into the dry ditch wall) and has views towards Newcastle Harbour and Central Business District.

Internally, the Barracks building consists of two large barrack rooms on either side of a central corridor, which can be accessed via external doors from its western and eastern ends (framed, ledged and battened with three pane transom lights above). Each of the barrack rooms has four sash windows with 3x2 panes per sash and aligned clerestory windows on the eastern and western walls, with a central fireplace located at the end of each room. The clerestory windows feature tapering reveals. The rooms' internal doors feature a simple four panel leaf with projected mouldings. The ceiling is corrugated iron with flat timber cornices. The skirtings are block profile timber. The walls are rendered. The flooring is covered with vinyl tiles consistent with finishes of barrack rooms of the period.<sup>109</sup> The cornices are bead edged timber boards with mitred corners, and they span the room just beneath the corrugated iron ceilings.

<sup>109</sup> Suters, Heritage Management Plan, 62.





Figure 120. On-site interpretation provides a brief context to the building and a diagram of the building's eastern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 121. View of the Barracks building, looking east. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 122. View to fortress wall and towards Newcastle Harbour, looking west. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 123. View of the Barracks building western façade, looking north. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 124. Internal view of the central corridor, looking east. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 125. Internal view of the central corridor, looking west. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 126. Internal view of the northern barrack room, looking north. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 127. Internal view of the southern barrack room, looking south. (Source: CPH, 2023)



### NCOs' Quarters (Building 8)

The NCOs' Quarters is a long and narrow hipped roof structure to the north of the Canteen and Barracks buildings and joins the complex's verandah system on its southwest corner. The building is bounded to the north and east by the upper level driveway retaining wall. The internal configuration of the building consists of a series of rooms arranged in an east-west line, containing from east to west: a pantry (accessible from the kitchen) and store, kitchen room, wash house, store, office (or additional barrack room), and two NCOs' rooms on the western end. Rooms are generally accessed from the narrow passageway that is created between the northern faces of the Barracks (**Building 7**) and Canteen (**Building 6**) buildings, however the wash house and kitchen can also be accessed from their northern sides. Each of these rooms have north and south facing double hung sash windows with 3x2 panes per sash and aligned clerestory louvred vents. The westernmost NCOs' room features one northern facing window and two windows facing west, and the pantry and stores rooms which each feature a single window (with six and four pane sashes, respectively) facing east. The central store room only has one north facing window. The floors are butted tallow wood boards, except in utility rooms such as the kitchen and wash house which have concrete floors



Figure 128. View of the passageway towards the western fortification wall. NCOs' Quarters pictured on the right. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 129. View towards Artillery Store (Building 15) on the right and Tunnels entrance. NCOs Quarters pictured on the left. (Source: CPH, 2023)





Figure 130. NCOs' Quarters, eastern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 131. Internal view of the former kitchen room, looking north. The room is now used as a museum space by the Fort Scratchley Historical Society. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 132. View of coal bunker adjacent to the NCOs' Quarters. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 133. Top view of coal bunker. The bunker was used to store coal needed for the Fort's cooking and heating needs from 1886 until well into the 20th century. (Source: CPH, 2024)

### Commandant's Cottage and Servant's Quarters (Buildings 9 and 10)

The Commandant's Cottage is a three bedroom bungalow located on an upper terrace and is elevated above the rest of the barracks complex. It is built in the Victorian Regency style and is connected to the associated Servant's Quarters by an open air walkway and a pantry room on the southern end. The

Cottage is located on the western side of the walkway while the Servant's Quarters and associated utility rooms are located on the east. From north to south the Cottage consists of two bedrooms, an Officers' sitting room, and another bedroom separated by central corridor. The southernmost bedroom abuts the southern edge of the upper terrace. The Servant's Quarters consists of from north to south: a wash house, a kitchen and a servant's bedroom. A large room described as the 'Servant's Closet' is located to the east of the Servant's Quarters adjacent to the eastern steps and is partially submerged in the upper terrace. It was converted to a bathroom during the 1978 reconstruction. Another bathroom and two small rooms containing a urinal and lavatory facilities are located at the bottom of the western steps.

Many of the buildings' timber elements were reconstructed during the 1978 works. At this time the roof, all window and door joinery, approximately 50% of the timber floors and all ceilings were replaced (the floorboards subsequently shrunk). Verandah infills dating from 1902 were also removed and the verandah framing and cast iron columns were reconstructed and reinstated.

The Commandant's Cottage and Servant's Quarters share a number of similar features with the rest of the barracks complex, such as, the rendered brickwork construction to imitate ashlar stonework, butted tallowwood floorboards (which are generally uncovered), concrete floors in the utility rooms, four panel doors with transom lights, and double hung sash windows with 3x2 panes per sash. The cast iron verandah columns are also similar to that of the other barracks buildings as they were reconstructed using the profile of the columns at the Commandant's Cottage. The doors leading to the verandah also generally have external screen doors attached.

Unlike the other buildings, the fireplaces in the Commandant's Cottage feature slate surrounds with wooden mantels and cast iron fireboxes and grates. The marble mantel to the fireplace in the Officers' is a replacement from Sydney.

A verandah spans the length of the western elevation. It features concrete flooring with stone nosing, however, it is likely that this finish is not original. The flat profile verandah roof is corrugated metal on timber framing similar to the other barracks. The verandah can be accessed from the Cottage through any of three sets of French doors on the western façade, a set of French doors on the eastern façade, or a pair of four panel doors at the ends of the central corridor. Each French door leads to one of the Cottage's bedrooms and feature a bottom panel with simple profile moulding and three fixed glass panes arranged vertically above. The French doors also have three pane transom lights above. The buildings' chimneys are simple rendered brick structures located on the ridge line decorated by simple corbelled crowns.

Internally, the fittings and fixtures vary in quality between the Commandant's Cottage and the Servant's Quarters. The Cottage wing has tallowwood floors, moulded skirtings, rendered walls, substantial cornices and plasterboard ceilings. Several of the cornices are reconstructions of remnants of the original profile and run in the traditional manner. Evidence of decorative plaster ceiling mouldings in the southernmost bedroom and central corridor of the Cottage remains, however, in other rooms such as the northernmost bedroom, more simple cavetto profile cornices have been installed.

In contrast, the Servant's Quarters rooms feature less decorative fixtures and fittings. The kitchen room and servant's bedroom have timber floorboards and feature skirtings that match those in the Cottage wing. However, it is also noted that the original skirtings in these rooms were likely to be less elaborate. The fireplace in the kitchen has a substantial opening, intended to take a fuel stove, and has no decorative surrounds apart from a stone mantelpiece, in the same style as those in the Barracks with an ogee profile base. The servant's bedroom does not have a fireplace at all. The wash house has a concrete floor and corrugated iron ceiling with flat timber cornices (reconstructed to match the previous fittings). It also has a rendered brick fireplace installed in the corner of the room's western wall.





Figure 134. View towards Commandant's Cottage, looking west. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 135. View towards Newcastle Harbour from Commandant's Cottage. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 136. View of French doors with transom lights leading to northernmost bedroom. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 137. View of four panel door with transom lights leading to pantry room. (Source: CPH, 2023)





Figure 138. Reinstated white marble fireplace in the Officers' Sitting Room. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 139. Reconstructed fireplace with timber mantelpiece in southern bedroom of Commandant's Cottage. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 140. Interior view of wash house, looking west. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 141. View of eastern steps leading to the Servant's Closet. (Source: CPH, 2023)

### NCOs' Ablutions

The NCOs' Ablutions block was constructed inside the southwest corner of the dry ditch wall which forms the rear wall of the ablutions block. It has a shallow pitched lean-to roof. The floor plan of the block is irregular and tapers towards the east. From west to east, the block consists of the gunners' bathroom, lavatories and then the NCOs' bathroom. The rooms can be entered through one of two framed and battened doors. The block is lit by a pair of centrally located glazed clerestory windows with projected sills and a single six pane casement window with stone sill in the gunners' bathroom. The loopholed fort wall that forms the rear wall of the block also provides additional light into these spaces.

No original fittings or fixtures remain in these spaces and they have since been converted to additional storage areas for military artefacts.



Figure 142. View of NCOs' Ablutions and Rations Block, looking east. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 143. The NCOs' Ablutions are lit by a pair of clerestory windows on its northern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 144. View over NCOs' Ablutions towards Newcastle East. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 145. View towards NCOs' Ablutions, looking south. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 146. Internal view of gunners' bathroom, looking south. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 147. Internal view of gunners' lavatory, looking south. (Source: CPH, 2023)



### 3.3.3. Gun Emplacements and Tunnels

The battery and gun emplacements, and other associated structures, form their own sub-complex within the subject site. It is comprised of three sections located at different floor levels. The above ground structures include the Western Barbette (**Building 11**), Battery Observation Post (**Building 12**), Artillery Store (**Building 15**), and guns mounted *en barbette* (**Buildings 13 and 14**). The level below is accessed via the Tunnels Entrance (**Building 16**) on the lower perimeter of the central parade ground.

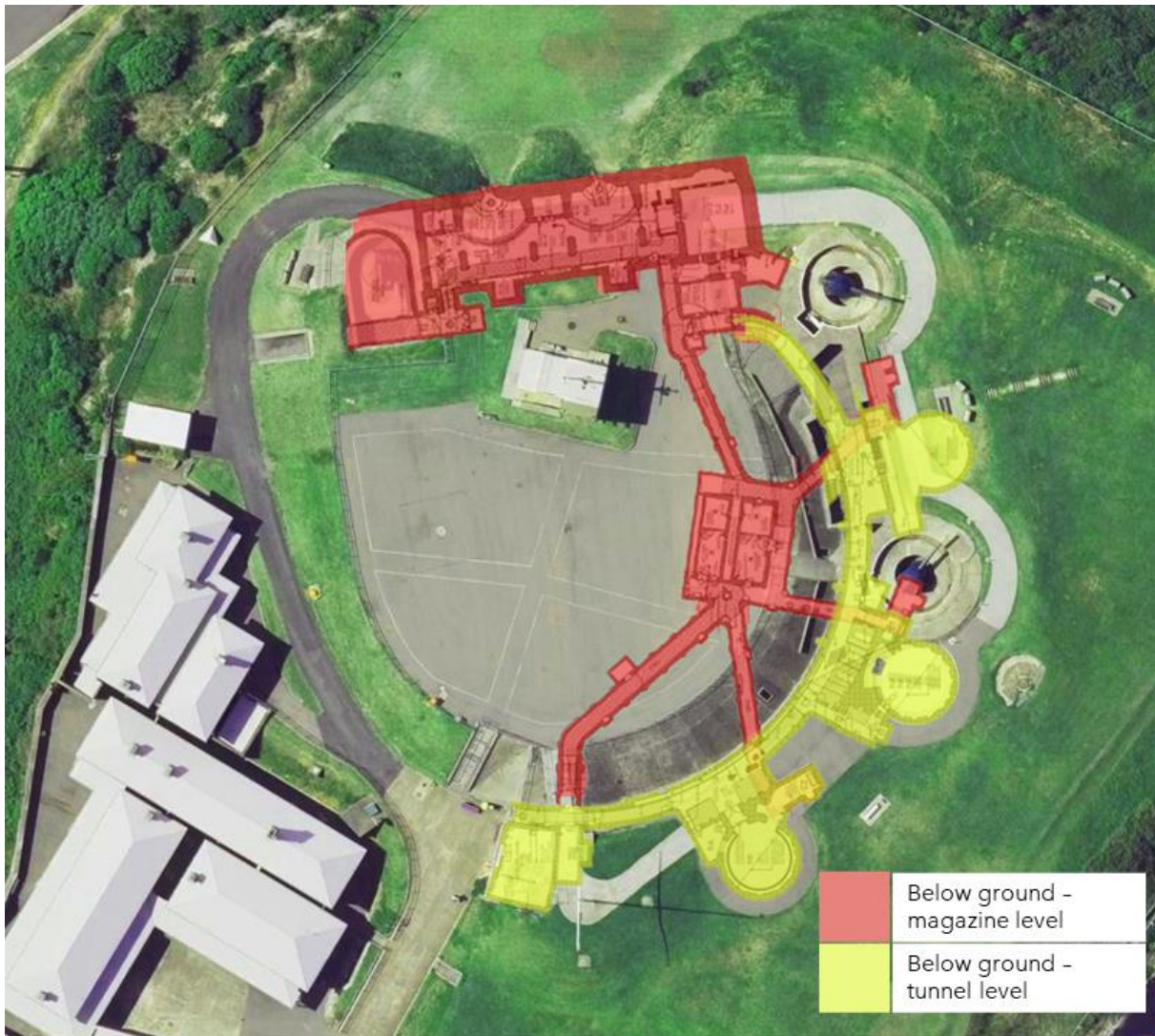


Figure 148. Aerial view over the gun emplacements and central parade ground. (Source: SIX Maps and drawings by Sutera Architects, adapted by CPH)

The tunnel level consists of a singular arched passageway that provides circulation between the previously open gun pits in which guns were lowered and installed. Each gun pit has an associated shell store and expense magazine located in its north wall and were previously serviced by shafts containing ammunition lifts through which ammunition could be transported from the lower magazine level. These shafts remain visible. The southern and northernmost gun pits have since been covered with a reinforced concrete roof reinforced with bullhead section rails. The central gun pit located adjacent to No. 1 Gun (**Building 13**) is covered with metal grating and panels, however, a central section of the metal grating is left exposed allowing the gun pit to be lit by natural light.

The lowest level is the magazine level. It consists of the main magazine located on the eastern portion below the parade ground, with various tunnels articulating off it towards ammunition lifts for each gun emplacement on the tunnel level, and three casemate batteries in a northern chamber which housed



guns that overlooked the approaches to Newcastle Harbour. The main magazine itself consists of two parallel pairs of batching and store rooms, separated by a central passage. A perimeter passage creates a blast chamber around the magazine. There is evidence of several openings from the magazine rooms, which are likely to have allowed the dispensing of charges and later, shells, however, these have generally been in-filled. The northern battery chamber is vaulted, dividing the chamber into individual sections for each casemate battery via a series of central pillars. These internal pillars create front and rear access paths to each gun, with the rear path providing access to the ventilation/delivery shafts at the rear of each chamber and the front path providing access to the expense magazine and stores. The eastern casemate battery has been significantly altered in contrast with the other structures, during its conversion to an additional magazine in 1911. This involved filling in the gun embrasure and constructing an additional interior wall to separate the magazine from the rest of the casemate batteries.

The battery and associated structures are all constructed from reinforced concrete between two and three feet thick, while the walls of the casemate are five feet thick. The walls, floors and ceilings are concrete, and the external doors are armoured. Metal fittings within the tunnels complex are nonferrous and tend to be brass or bronze, and most other fittings and fixtures are wooden. All floors in the tunnels complex slope in the direction of loading ammunition. The tunnels also utilise an effective ventilation system provided by a series of terracotta ventilation pipes and breeze blocks which are buried slightly above the tunnels. This system of ventilation provides cool air to the tunnels allowing airflow through the tunnels complex, minimising impacts associated with high moisture levels. The tunnels are primarily lit by contemporary light fittings and windows with a fixed screen on the interior face. Prior to the installation of contemporary lighting, the magazine level was primarily lit by gas lamps contained within lamp enclosures built into the walls and corners of the tunnels. These enclosures were designed to protect the tunnels and magazines from naked flames, with more dangerous areas including glass panes to shield the surrounds from the naked flame. Some lamp enclosures have been reconstructed from drawings obtained in England.



Figure 149. View to Tunnels Entrance. (Source: CPH, 2023)

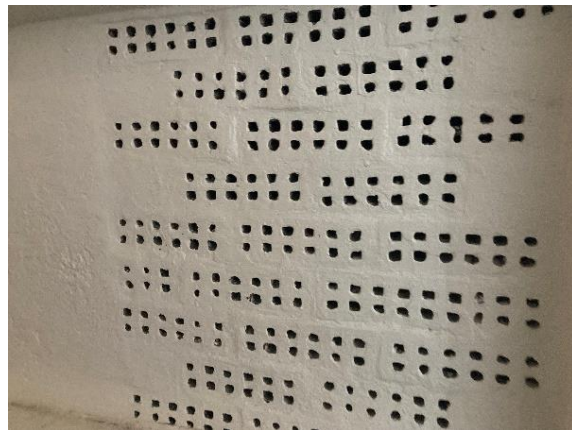


Figure 150. Tunnel interiors are vented by a system of terracotta pipes and breeze blocks to keep the climate cool and dry. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 151. View to Gun Emplacement 1. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 152. Internal view of Gun Emplacement 1. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 153. Internal view of Gun Emplacement 2. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 154. View of Gun Emplacement 2 at ground level. Note the central section of exposed grating. (Source: CPH, 2023)





Figure 155. The Small Arms Store adjacent to the Artillery Store has been converted to museum space. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 156. A typical ammunition lift from the magazine level. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 157. Internal view of Gun Emplacement 3. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 158. View to magazine level stairs. (Source: CPH, 2023)





Figure 159. Example of lift machinery used to transport larger parts between levels. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 160. View to lift machine space. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 161. Internal view of shell store adjacent to the central magazine stairs. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 162. Internal view to central magazine stairs. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 163. Example of a lamp enclosure contained within the tunnel wall. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 164. Ventilation shaft in Casemate Battery 2 chamber. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 165. Internal view of the northern casemate battery chamber, looking west. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 166. Internal view of Casemate Battery 1 since converted to additional magazine. (Source: CPH, 2023)





Figure 167. View of gun mounted at Casemate Battery 2.  
(Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 168. Internal view of rear access path from Casemate Battery 2 chamber, looking east.  
(Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 169. Internal view of Casemate Battery 2 chamber.  
(Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 170. View of gun mounted at Casemate Battery 3.  
(Source: CPH, 2023)





Figure 171. Internal view of tunnels leading from main magazine to the casemate batteries. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 172. Internal view of eastern store room within main magazine. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 173. Internal view of ammunition lift space for Gun Emplacement 1. Note the breeze blocks and vent providing ventilation to the space. There is also evidence of original signage on the right. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 174. Internal view of western batching room. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 175. View of tunnel towards tunnel entrance stairs. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 176. View of tunnel leading to magazine from southern magazine stairs. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 177. Evidence of previous openings in the main magazine rooms, western batching room. (Source: CPH, 2023)

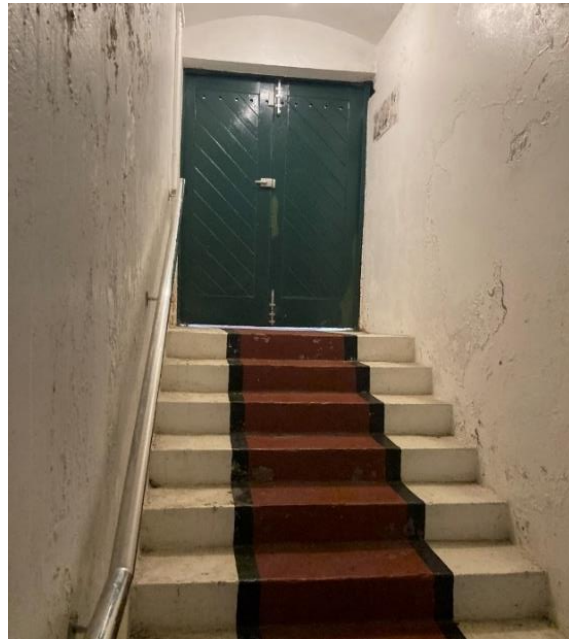


Figure 178. Stairs leading to tunnel entrance from the magazine level. (Source: CPH, 2023)

### Western Barbette (Building 11)

The Western Barbette is an open gun pit which currently houses a restored 80 lb RML gun. It is accessed via a tunnel from the west which is elevated below the parade ground which is at a higher level. Like the other casemate structures, it is a reinforced concrete structure. It was sited towards the northwest of the site to provide battery cover to the inner section of Newcastle Harbour. The magazine level of the tunnels complex can be entered from an entrance in the southeast corner of the Western Barbette.



Figure 179. View of Western Barbette, looking towards Stockton. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 180. Entrance tunnel to Western Barbette, with interpretation panels on walls. (Source: CPH, 2024)



### Battery Observation Post (Building 12)

The Battery Observation Post was the communications centre for the battery. It is centrally located within the battery complex to the north of the parade ground, and was built on the site of the previous Signal Station. It has commanding views to the east, north and south, and had the advantage of elevation to gain maximum effectiveness for the depression range finder, the chief instrument in providing target information to the battery and gun emplacements. The Battery Observation Post was also located away from the guns to remove it from the flash, blast, vibration and noise of the guns firing.<sup>110</sup> Like other battery observation posts at Australian coastal fortifications, the Battery Observation Post at Fort Scratchley is housed in a concrete blockhouse with a cantilevered flat roof which provided an expansive vista for range finding and observation instruments.

The building was originally constructed in 1914 to replace three depression range finder structures that were located on the parade ground. It was originally built as a two-storey structure with single storey stores and an equipment area to the south side. The observation level was extended during the Second World War over the stores with a timber floor, and a single storey extension was constructed to the west. Originally, the observation level was accessed by a steel ladder that led to a manhole in the floor, however, with the additions made during the Second World War, an external staircase was installed to provide secondary access. It is a concrete structure with curved parapets that provide additional structural support to the cantilevered roof. The original walls were finished in 25 mm render and the later extensions are off-form concrete. The windows in the observation room are bronze framed and are hinged at the bottom, opening outwards. The open casements were originally supported by concrete outriggers that remain visible on the exterior.

Following the transfer of searchlight control functions to the Battery Observation Post during the Second World War, a trench was dug across the parade ground to direct power from the Searchlight Generator building (**Building 4**) and to allow for communications from the searchlight directing station (**Building 18**). The location of this trench was previously visible in the parade ground, however, following works undertaken prior to the transfer of ownership to City of Newcastle Council it has since been covered.



Figure 181. View to Battery Observation Post, looking north.  
(Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 182. Battery Observation Post, northern elevation.  
(Source: CPH, 2024)

<sup>110</sup> Richard Kennedy Fullford, "We stood and waited: Sydney's anti-ship defences, 1939-1945," (Manly: Royal Australian Artillery Historical Society, 1994), 85-87.





Figure 183. Detail observation level with concrete outrigger projections. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 184. Interior view of observation room, looking east. (Source: CPH, 2023)

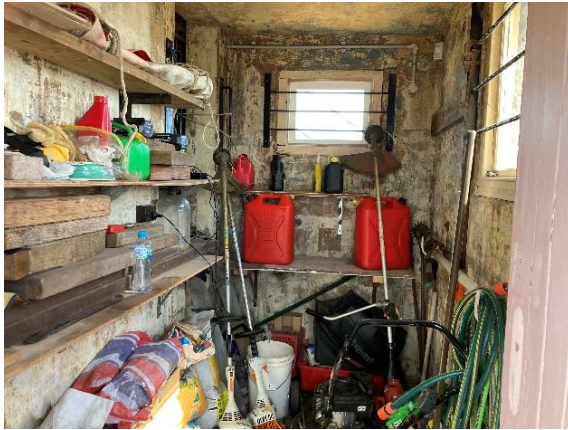


Figure 185. Interior view of single storey store room. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 186. 'Bleaching' sculpture by Michael Greve. Temporary installation as part of the Sculptures at Scratchley Festival. (Source: CPH, 2023)

### Nos. 1 and 2 Guns (Buildings 13 and 14)

The No. 1 and 2 Guns refer to the reinforced concrete structures built to house the two 6 inch Mk VII guns mounted *en barbette*. These new guns required much shallower pits than the former disappearing guns, therefore, new gun pits were constructed above tunnel level gun emplacements. The No. 1 Gun (**Building 13**) is partially built over Gun Emplacement 2, and the No. 2 Gun is built over a fourth northern gun pit that was constructed during the 1889-1892 modification works. These pits are connected by a blast wall between the two which shield a flight of stairs that connect to the upper level of the tunnel complex. These passageways circulate around the rear of gun pits and contain shell and armoury stores.



Figure 187. View to Nos. 1 and 2 Guns from the Battery Observation Post. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 188. Entrance to the No. 1 Gun pit. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 189. A flight of stairs offers circulation between the gun pits and the blast wall. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 190. View of the connecting passageway between Nos. 1 and 2 Guns. (Source: CPH, 2023)





Figure 191. Stores area underneath the gun pedestals. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 192. View of covered passageway beneath No. 1 Gun. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 193. View of No. 1 Gun, one of a pair of 6 inch Mk VII BL guns. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 194. Front view of No. 2 Gun. (Source: CPH, 2023)

### Artillery Store (Building 15)

The Artillery Store is a reinforced concrete structure that adjoins the entrance to the tunnels complex and a small arms store at its rear. It was originally the artillery store and is currently being used as a museum shop by the Fort Scratchley Historical Society. It is partly built within the topography of the upper portion of the site. It is lit by a combination of natural light from a single window on its southern side and internal contemporary light fittings. It is accessed by a large sliding door with a concrete and steel lintel above.



Figure 195. Exterior view of Artillery Store. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 196. Interior view of Artillery Store. (Source: CPH, 2024)



### 3.4. General Condition

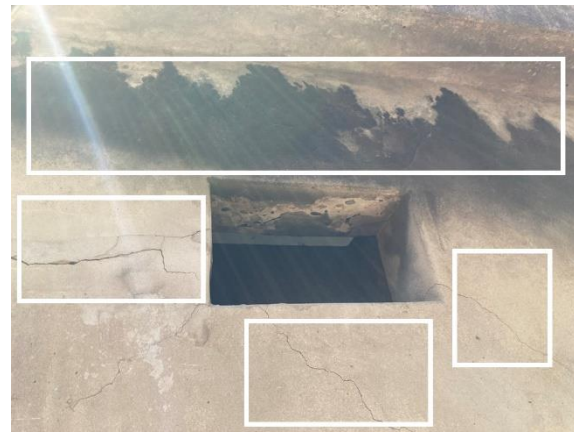
A detailed survey of the site's conditions was recorded in the 2008 Heritage Management Plan prepared by Suters Architects in association with Dawbin Architect and again in 2009 (this condition survey is included in the 2013 Fort Scratchley Plan of Management). Since these Plans were prepared, the conditions at Fort Scratchley have changed owing to the site's ongoing use as a public museum, as well as identified issues with funding for proactive conservation and management. A visual inspection of accessible elements undertaken as part of this CMP gave an indicative overview of the conditions, with observations as follows.

#### Masonry and concrete

Rendered brickwork masonry and reinforced concrete presents as generally intact throughout the site, with localised areas of spalling and cracking. While this deterioration can be attributed to the impermeable finishes/coatings, the marine climate at Fort Scratchley, or structural failure, it should be formally assessed by a structural engineer. Compromised masonry elements, including the render, have allowed for the ingress of moisture, accelerating deterioration. Efflorescence and biological growth is also evident on a number of the structures.



*Figure 197. Detailed view of cracking and previous repairs on Battery Observation Post. (Source: CPH, 2023)*



*Figure 198. Detailed view of cracking and biological staining on external masonry. (Source: CPH, 2023)*



Figure 199. Detailed view of efflorescence and biological staining on NCOs Quarters southern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 200. View of biological staining on Searchlight Generator Room western elevation. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 201. Detailed view of spalling of the ceiling. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 202. Detailed view of spalling of tunnel ceiling. Note the surrounding rusted elements. (Source: CPH, 2023)





Figure 203. Detailed view of delaminated render and exposed masonry. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 204. Delaminated render and efflorescence are present on the NCOs' Ablutions block exterior. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 205. Spalling is evident on Battery Observation Post concrete outrigger. Note the exposed rusted reinforcements. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 206. Evidence of spalling at the Searchlight Directing Station. As with the Battery Observation Post, the embedded reinforcements are exposed and heavily rusted. (Source: CPH, 2024)



## Joinery

During the extensive restoration works carried out in the 1970s and later as part of the 2007-2008 works, significant attention was dedicated to the repair and reinstatement of deteriorated joinery elements, particularly within the barracks complex. While the interior joinery is generally intact throughout the site, the condition of external joinery paint is typically worse, showing signs of advanced deterioration. Further, additional evidence of deterioration present as timber rot around window frames, and the rusting of external metal elements such as frames, security bars and the metal sheets cladding some doors of the inner fort buildings.



Figure 207. Detailed view of water staining and wood rot present on window sills. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 208. The Laboratory building's windows exhibit rusting of metal elements and deterioration of the window frames. Subsequent rust staining of the façade is evident. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 209. Rusted security bars with peeling paint, causing staining to the projecting sill. There are also signs of lichen growth around the windows. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 210. The external doors to the Searchlight Generator Room exhibit signs of deterioration with peeling paint, rust and delamination of the metal sheets from the door leaf. (Source: CPH, 2023)





Figure 211. Paint delaminating from the rusted steel shutter. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 212. Deterioration of door lintel with peeling paint and rusted metal elements. The door leaves also exhibit peeling paint and rusting. (Source: CPH, 2023)

The lamp recesses found within the magazine level of the tunnels complex are generally intact and in good condition. They were restored as part of the 2007-2008 works. The recesses display varying degrees of oxidation which are highlighted in the photographs below.



Figure 213. Restored bronze lamp recess displaying minor oxidation. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 214. Restored bronze lamp recess with no visible deterioration. (Source: CPH, 2023)

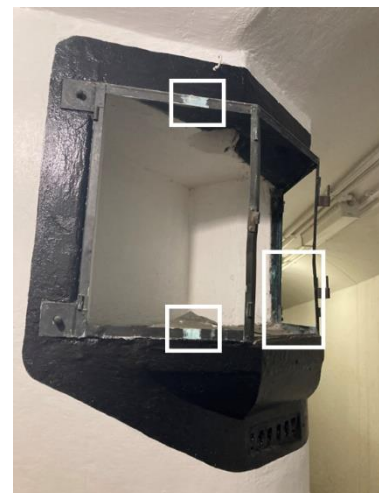


Figure 215. Restored lamp recess with missing bronze mesh, displaying oxidation. (Source: CPH, 2023)

## Paint Finishes

The paint finish of interior spaces is generally in good condition, however, there are localised areas of blistering and peeling. This can be due to causes that include rising and falling damp or incompatible finish coats.



Figure 216. Blistering paintwork with some paint peeling. Salt accumulation is also visible. (Source: CPH, 2023)

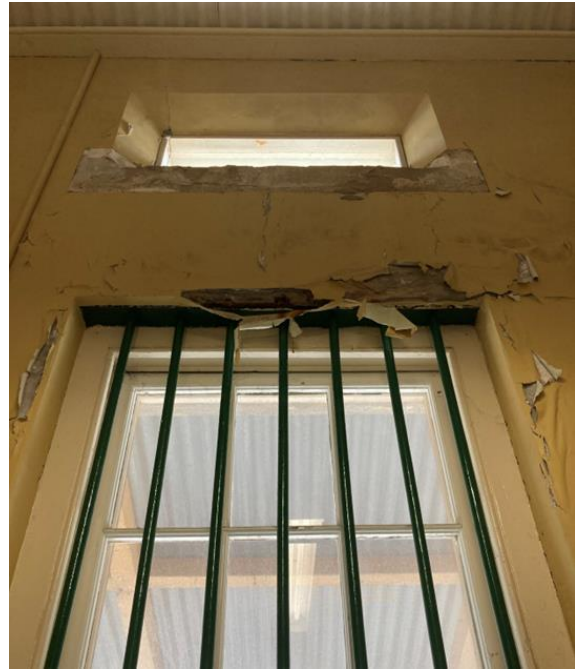


Figure 217. Peeling paint around timber window unit. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 218. Peeling paint on ceiling of eastern casemate magazine. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 219. Visible salt accumulation and flaking paint on interior wall. (Source: CPH, 2023)



## Armaments

The armaments at Fort Scratchley are in good condition. The Fort Scratchley Historical Society is responsible for their maintenance and restoration works, which are undertaken in the Workshop building located in the outer fort. The casemate and barbette structures that house the Fort's armaments are also in varying conditions, with the Western Barbette and Nos. 1 and 2 Guns in good condition, while the underground casemate batteries evidencing issues with damp along the northern wall around the embrasures.



Figure 220. Side view of No. 1 Gun. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 221. Front view of No. 1 Gun. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 222. No. 2 Gun. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 223. No. 2 Gun (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 224. Nordenfelt 1.5 inch Quick Firing Gun located in the central casemate battery. (Source: CPH, 2023)



Figure 225. 80 lb gun, in Western Barbette. (Source: CPH, 2024)



Figure 226. 80 lb RML Gun located in the western casemate battery. (Source: CPH, 2023)



### 3.5. Views

The Fort Scratchley Historic Site is located on top of Signal Hill, 'Tahlbinh', in the Newcastle East precinct approximately 1km to the east from the Newcastle Central Business District. Due to its elevated position, it is visible from all northern, southern, eastern, and western approaches (see Figure 229). The site comprises part of Newcastle's coastal defence system which also includes the Shepherds Hill Defence Site and Fort Wallace. Within the context of the Newcastle East, it is immediately bordered to the south and west by medium density residential development and public recreation areas to the west and north. The residential development around the site is a combination of low-rise apartment buildings and double storey terrace houses, with taller mid-rise apartment buildings located further away beginning at Scott Street. Recreation areas include Foreshore Park, Macquarie Pier, and Nobbys Beach. The Newcastle Ocean Baths is also in close proximity to the site and can be seen from the upper parade ground. Figures 227 and 230 locate the Fort Scratchley Historic Site in relation to nearby landmarks in the Newcastle Area.

The site is included in the Newcastle East Heritage Conservation Area (C5), which spans from the suburb of Hamilton East to Newcastle East, and is primarily bordered by King Street and Parry Street on its southern edge. This heritage conservation area includes other heritage items such as Customs House, the Newcastle Ocean Baths, the Convict Lumber Yard, Nobbys Beach Pavilion, and Newcastle Civic Precinct to name a few.

The site is also included in the Coal River Precinct listing (SHR item no. 01674) on the NSW State Heritage Register. The curtilage of the precinct extends upwards from the corner of Nobbys Road and Fort Drive and covers the Fort Scratchley Historic Site, the section of Shortland Esplanade that borders Fort Scratchley, the upper portion of Foreshore Park, Macquarie Pier, Nobbys Beach and Nobbys Lighthouse.

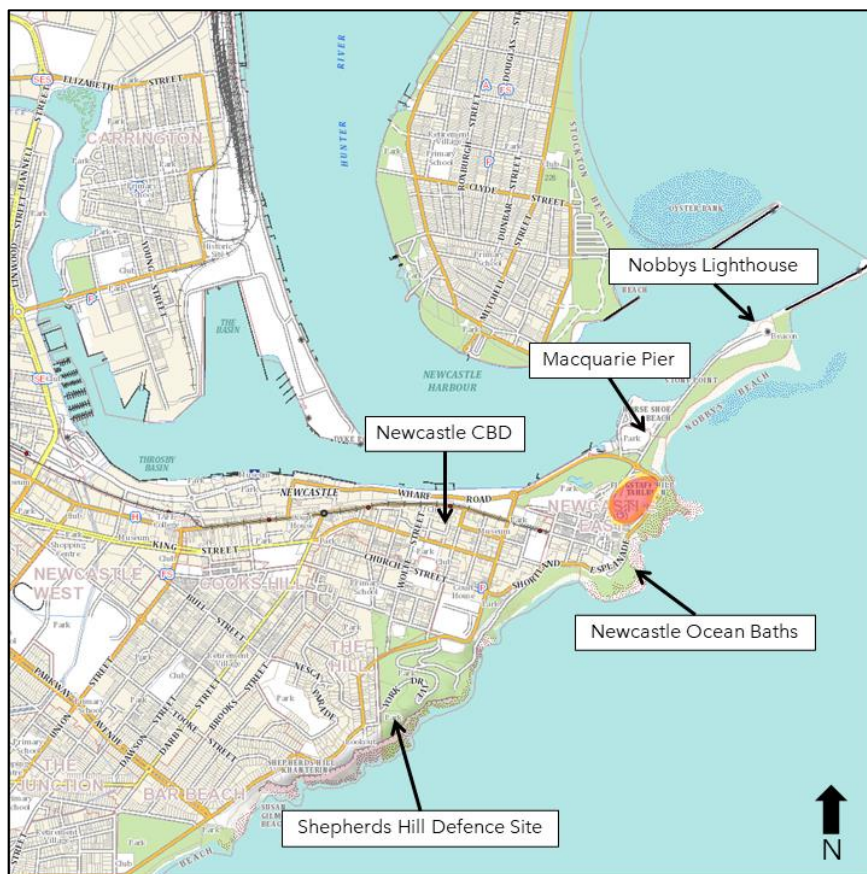


Figure 227. Map showing the location of the subject site (allotment shaded red) in relation to the Newcastle CBD, Macquarie Pier, Nobbys Lighthouse, Newcastle Ocean Baths and Shepherds Hill Defence Site. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)

There are strong visual links between Fort Scratchley, Nobbys Head and the mouth of the Hunter River, which is a significant aspect of the site's selection and use as a coastal defence site. At present, there are direct lines of sight from the parade ground at Fort Scratchley to the Tasman Sea to the east (View 2), Nobbys Head (View 3), Worimi (View 4) and Stockton to the north (View 5), and Newcastle CBD to the west (View 6). There are also distant views to the Shepherds Hill Defence Site, however, these are becoming increasingly limited to and from Fort Scratchley due to surrounding residential development along Shortland Esplanade. Similarly, views to Fort Scratchley from the Newcastle CBD are also becoming increasingly limited due to increased development of mid to high-rise buildings in the CBD. Careful planning is required to ensure that these links are not interrupted or further compromised.

The 2008 Suters Architects Heritage Management Plan established four view shafts to the subject site. They included:

- From the corner of Nobbys Road and Fort Drive towards the site.
- From the driveway to the inner fort.
- From Foreshore Park to the Fort's western elevation.
- From Macquarie Pier to the Fort's casemate batteries and Battery Observation Post.

These view shafts have been updated (Figure 228) to include the following:

<b>View</b>	<b>Associated images</b>
View 1 From the corner of Nobbys Road and Fort Drive towards the site.	Figure 231-Figure 232
View 1a From the driveway to the inner fort.	Figure 231, Figure 233
View 2 From the Fort parade ground over the Tasman Sea.	Figure 234-Figure 235
View 3 From Macquarie Pier to the Fort's casemate batteries and Battery Observation Post.	Figure 236-Figure 239
View 4 From the Fort parade ground to Worimi National Park.	Views to the Worimi National Park are distant and are difficult to capture in this views analysis
View 5 From the Fort parade ground to Stockton Peninsula.	Figure 240-Figure 244
View 6 From the Fort parade ground to Newcastle CBD and Newcastle Harbour.	Figure 243-Figure 246
View 7 From Foreshore Park to the Fort's western elevation.	Figure 247-Figure 248
<b>Other significant views</b>	
View 8	Figure 249-Figure 250



From Fort Drive to the Fort's western elevation.	
View 9 From the Fort parade ground looking south over Shortland Esplanade towards the Tasman Sea.	Figure 251-Figure 252
View 10 From the Fort parade ground to the Shepherds Hill Defence Site.	Figure 253-Figure 255

Table 3. Table of Significant Views and Associated Images



Figure 228. Updated significant views to and from Fort Scratchley. Subject allotment is shaded red. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)



Figure 229. View towards Fort Scratchley from the Tasman Sea. (Source: Bing Maps, adapted by CPH)



Figure 230. Expansive views towards Newcastle Harbour, Stockton and Worimi from Fort Scratchley, looking northwest. (Source: Steven Lerch for Google Maps, 2018)



View 1



Figure 231. Views 1 and 1a from corner of Nobbys Road and Fort Drive to the site are unhindered as the surrounding residential development has maintained a sympathetic profile that does not block visual access. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)



Figure 232. View 1, looking northeast towards the outer gates of Fort Scratchley. (Source: CPH, 2023)

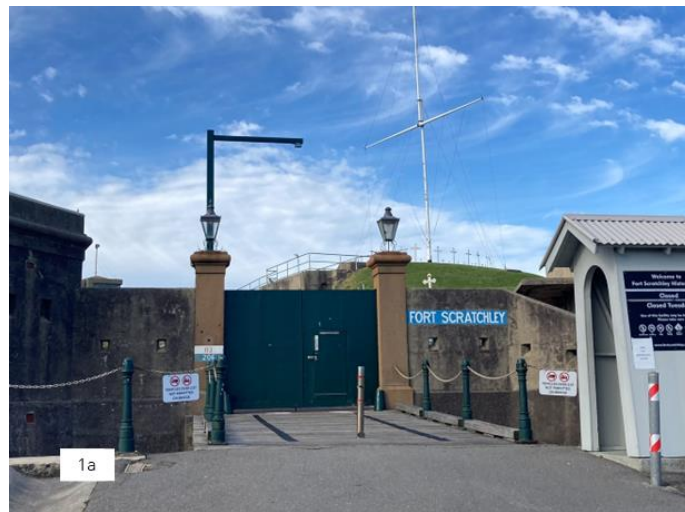


Figure 233. View 1a, looking northeast to the inner fort gates from the driveway. (Source: CPH, 2023)

View 2

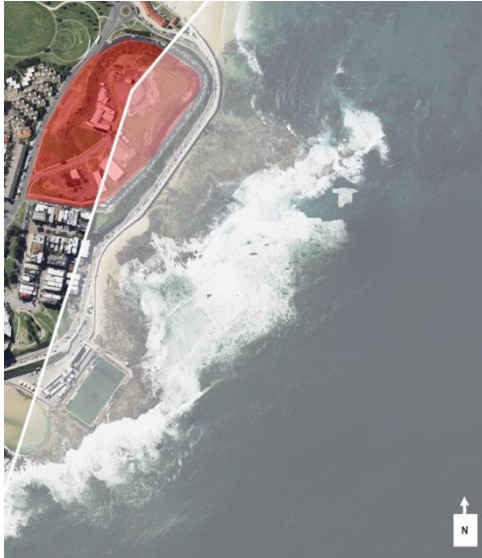


Figure 234. The elevated position of Fort Scratchley offers expansive views over and from the Tasman Sea. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)



Figure 235. View 2, looking southeast to the Tasman Sea. (Source: CPH, 2023)

View 3



Figure 236. The northern elevation including casemate batteries and Battery Observation Post,



Figure 237. View 3 to Nobbys Head from Fort Scratchley. The Worimi National Park is visible in the distance. (Source: CPH, 2023)



### View 3

are visible from Nobbys Head. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)



Figure 238. View 3, looking to Fort Scratchley from Macquarie Pier. (Source: Google Street View, August 2017)

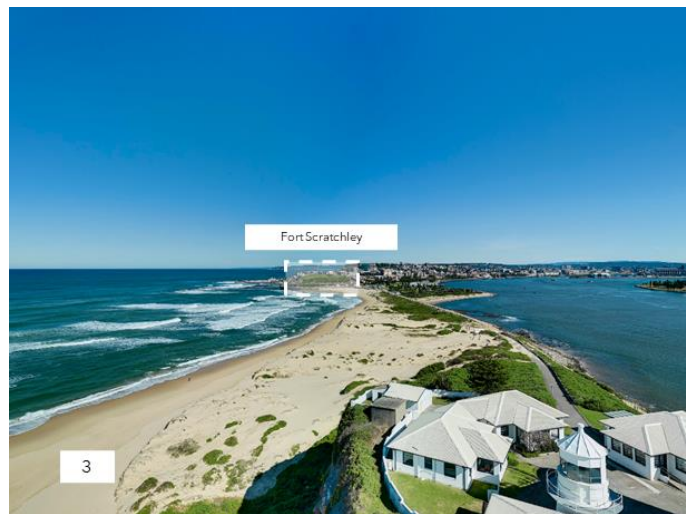


Figure 239. View 3, elevated view to Fort Scratchley from Nobbys Lighthouse. (Source: Peter Graf for Google Maps, October 2018)

View 5



Figure 240. The western elevation of Fort Scratchley is from the Stockton Peninsula. There are numerous views possible from the different public parks that abut the water. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)



Figure 241. View 5, looking to Fort Scratchley from Stockton. (Source: Google Street View, October 2022)



Figure 242. View 5, looking to Stockton from Fort Scratchley. (Source: CPH, 2024)



View 5/6



Figure 243. View 5/6 showing direct lines of site to the port facilities in Newcastle Harbour and the Stockton Peninsula. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)



Figure 244. Views 5 and 6 to Stockton and Newcastle Harbour port facilities, looking west. (Source: CPH, 2023)

View 6



Figure 245. Views to the Newcastle CBD, including wharves, and the Newcastle Harbour port are possible from the upper parade ground at Fort Scratchley. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)

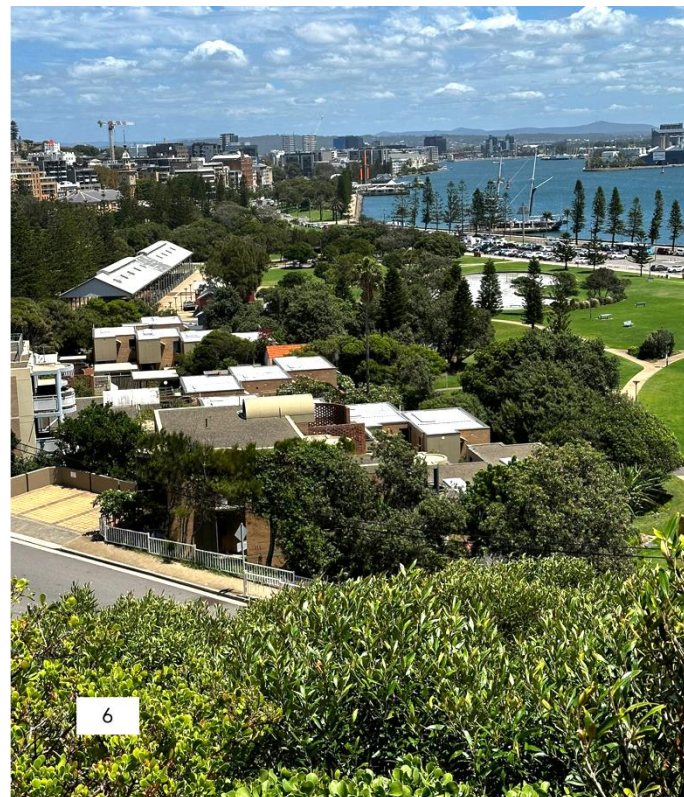


Figure 246. View 6, looking towards Newcastle CBD and the Hunter River. (Source: CPH, 2024)



### View 7



Figure 247. Views of Fort Scratchley's western elevation from Foreshore Park are possible due to the lower elevation of the park and open urban design. Views to the park are possible from the Fort's parade ground, including Newcastle Customs House which is located on the western border of Foreshore Park. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)



Figure 248. View 7, looking to Fort Scratchley from the northern border of Foreshore Park. (Source: CPH, 2023)

### Other significant views

#### View 8



Figure 249. The Victorian Regency style barracks complex is visible from the street along the site's western border. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)



Figure 250. View 8 of Fort Scratchley's western elevation from street level. (Source: Google Street View, June 2022)



### View 9



Figure 251. Views to the south are limited due to the increase of midrise residential developments along Shortland Esplanade. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)



Figure 252. View 9 towards Shortland Esplanade and over the Tasman Sea, looking south from the parade ground. (Source: CPH, 2023)

### View 10



Figure 253. Views to Fort Scratchley from Shepherds Hill are possible, however, they are limited due to increasing residential development despite the higher elevation of the Shepherds Hill Defence Site. Views from Fort Scratchley to Shepherds Hill are becoming increasingly more

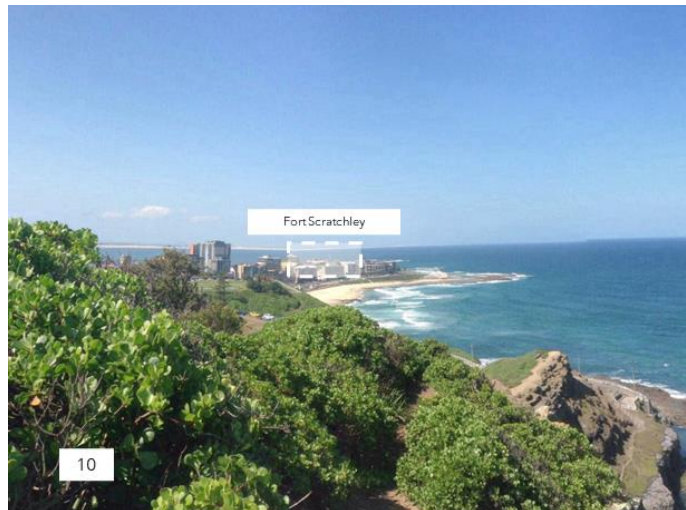


Figure 254. View 10 to Fort Scratchley from Shepherds Hill Defence Site. (Source: Steven Lerch for Google Maps, October 2018)

### View 10

limited due to the same development. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)

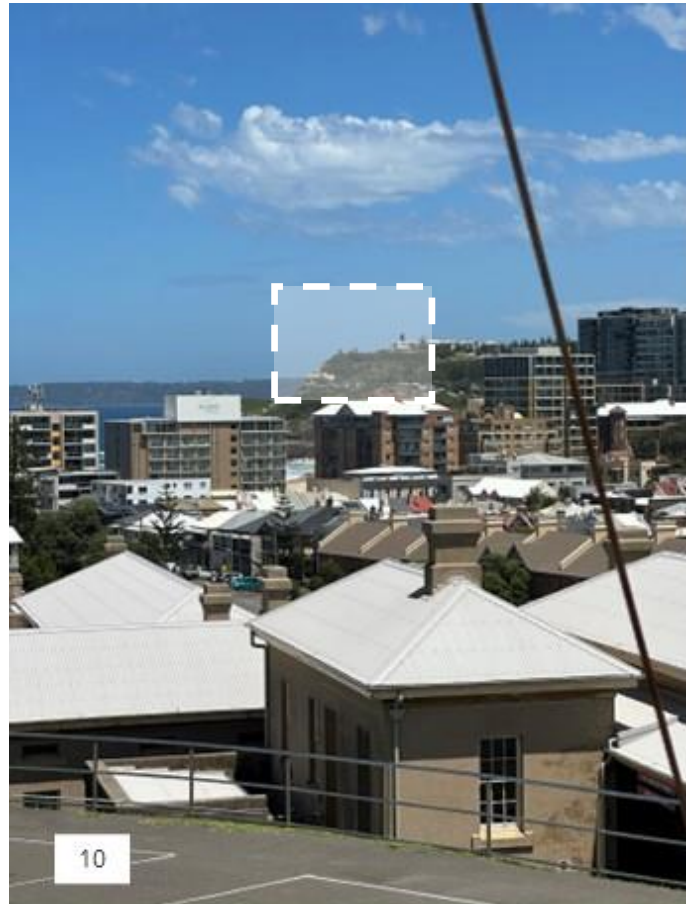


Figure 255. View 10, looking to Shepherds Hill Defence Site from Fort Scratchley. (Source: CPH, 2024)



### 3.6. Curtilage

The immediate physical curtilage of the subject site is defined by the borders of Lot 1, DP407886, the perimeter of which is defined by Fort Drive and Nobbys Road, Newcastle East. In the context of Fort Scratchley, its elevated position on Signal Hill is significant to its original siting as a coastal defence site. Therefore, the design and implementation of future development in the Newcastle East (and the broader City of Newcastle) area should consider potential impacts to the significant views to and from Fort Scratchley, including important views on approach from Nobbys Road as well as views to and from the Newcastle CBD, Nobbys Head, over Newcastle Harbour and the Hunter River (including the Stockton Peninsula), as well as the distant views over the Tasman Sea and towards Shepherds Hill Defence Site and Worimi National Park.



**LEGEND**

■ Fort Scratchley Site   
 ■ Coal River Precinct   
 ■ Newcastle East HCA

Fort Scratchley Historic Site  
 SHR no. 01674  
 Curtilage



Figure 256. Curtilage of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)

### 3.7. Comparative Analysis

Comparative analysis complements heritage significance assessments by locating a site within a broader context of an architectural period, certain movements or styles, and amongst buildings of similar uses. The places discussed below provide a broad overview of the comparable sites that convey a similar diversity of cultural significance as the Fort Scratchley Historic Site.

This comparative analysis will examine the site in the context of other Australian and New Zealand coastal fortifications.

#### 3.7.1. Generally

Early colonial fortifications in Australia represent a physical manifestation of historical cultural themes. For example, one of the principal cultural themes of the nineteenth century was a "sense of isolation and fear of the external 'other'" "a sense of tension and fear about perceived vulnerability to external attack".<sup>111</sup> In the context of the Australian colony, concerns arising from Anglo-Russian and Anglo-French tension (a legacy of the Napoleonic and Crimean Wars) provided a stimulus to construct fortifications to protect important ports, such as Port Jackson and Port Phillip, and other important waterways such as the Hunter River leading to Newcastle, as it was an important centre for the production and supply of coal in the Southern Hemisphere. The fortification complexes constructed to protect these ports, like Fort Scratchley, often demonstrated design principles borrowed from British military planning, as is evident at sites like the Palmerston Forts and the Alderney Fortifications. These historic fortifications include a range of architectural forms and earthworks designed for offensive and defensive purposes, such as their "[siting over] a commanding vista, their evocative collections of tunnels, embrasures, emplacements, underground magazines".<sup>112</sup> Although the original functions of the fortification systems may continue or become obsolete, the surviving building fabric generally exhibits the following defensive characteristics:

- **Barrier and protection:** *The primary attribute to protect human activity and settlement against any external threats with the ability to resist attack;*
- **Command:** *the ability to monitor the area surrounding the defended zone as far as possible and prevent the attacker from approaching;*
- **Depth:** *a military strategy that seeks to delay rather than prevent the advance of an attacker by yielding space to buy time; this tactic allows for the creation of successive defensive lines;*
- **Flanking:** *A strategy that aims to delete blind spots, commonly applied with above-ground structures (e.g., rampart, towers, or bastions);*
- **Deterrence:** *a defensive strategy used to deter the enemy from attacking by instilling doubt or fear of the consequences. This strategy can include a range of tactics including, the construction of a majestic enclosure and its defensive attributes, (e.g., multiple openings for shooting, scale of gates and towers, decoration of walls and entrance).<sup>113</sup>*

As mentioned previously, the design principles of Australian coastal fortifications had its genesis in the British fortification style. Often, British forts were designed as individual, self-contained polygonal units that worked in conjunction to defend an area with interlocking fields of fire.<sup>114</sup> This typology of buildings were often built on high ground, surrounded by wide, deep dry ditches that were casemated with ramparts upon which the armaments were mounted. The polygonal design of these forts also facilitated the use of caponiers at the corners of these forts to provide covered positions to fire artillery. Large barrack blocks were sited at the rear of the fortifications, sometimes surrounded by a redan (flèche), that abutted the central parade ground. This central area would consist of free-standing buildings, while magazines and stores would be connected to the barracks and casemates via a complex of tunnels.

<sup>111</sup> Federation of Australian Historical Societies, "A Thematic Study of the Nineteenth Century Defences," November 2019, Report Prepared for the Australian Heritage Council, 10-11.

<sup>112</sup> Patrick Miller, "Military architecture," in *The Encyclopedia of Australian Architecture*, edited by Phillip Goad and Julie Willis (Melbourne: Cambridge University Press, 2012), 455.

<sup>113</sup> ICOMOS International Scientific Committee on Fortifications and Military Heritage, "ICOMOS Guidelines on Fortifications and Military Heritage," April 30, 2020. [https://www.icofort.org/\\_files/ugd/57e5c5\\_ac4934abb83c47229061509712f8cc1c.pdf](https://www.icofort.org/_files/ugd/57e5c5_ac4934abb83c47229061509712f8cc1c.pdf).

<sup>114</sup> Judy Ehlen, "Defending Britain's Soft Underbelly: Invasion, Fortification and Geology Near Portsmouth, Hampshire," in *Military Geoscience: A Multifaceted Approach to the Study of Warfare*, edited by Aldino Bondesan and Judy Ehlen (electronic: Springer Nature, 2022), 40.



This style of fortification design was immensely popular during the Victorian era, however with advances in military technology in the latter half of the nineteenth century, such as new, more powerful rifled-guns, stone and brick forts increasingly became obsolete as they could not withstand such explosive fire, and fell out of favour for forts constructed using soil, sand, and chalk. While many forts were modified and adapted to the suit the needs of novel military technologies during the World Wars, by the mid-twentieth century, many of these forts became obsolete due to the increase in artillery and air power, and the rise of mobile warfare during the Second World War.<sup>115</sup>

A considerable number of coastal fortifications survive to this day in NSW and across Australia (and other former British colonies), however, as they each differently express principles of colonial fortification, individual sites, like Fort Scratchley, demonstrate significance in their own unique ways.

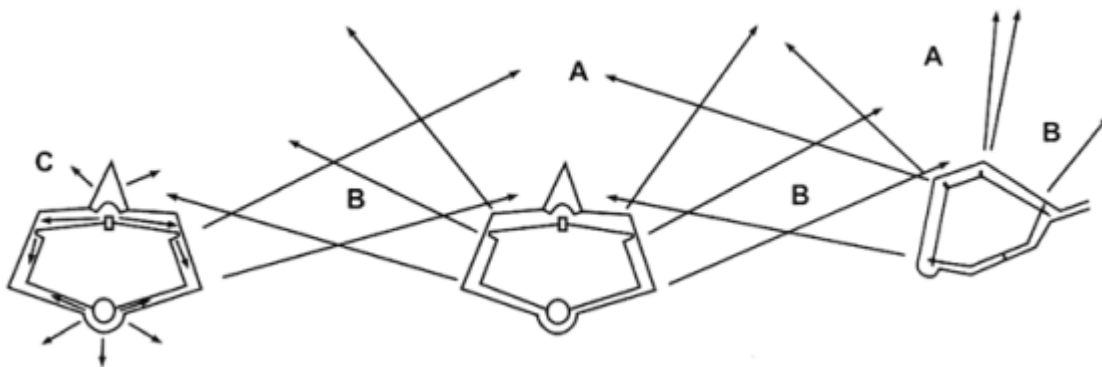


Figure 257. The Prussian 'system' of fortification showing interlocking fields of fire. A = Frontal, from the main ramparts. B = Crossfire, from the flanks. C = Local, from caponiers and keep. (Source: J. Ehlen, 2022)




Figure 258. Fort Tourgis at Alderney, British Isles. Aerial view. Figure 259. Fort Nelson at Portsmouth, Hampshire. Aerial view. (Source: Visit Alderney, accessed January 2024)


<sup>115</sup> Judy Ehlen, *Defending Britain's Soft Underbelly*, 50; Paul Hirst, "The Defence of Places: Fortifications as Architecture [part 1]," *AA Files*, no. 33 (Summer 1997): 25; Paul Hirst, "The Defence of Places: Fortifications as Architecture [part 2]," *AA Files*, no. 34 (Autumn 1997): 12.


### 3.7.2. Australian coastal fortifications

Fort Scratchley is a representative example of a nineteenth century coastal fortification. The following examples provide a shared historical context for colonial coastal fortification and demonstrate the contribution of these sites to Australia's early colonial history.


Item	Photo and Description
<p><b>Fort Denison</b></p> <p><i>Pinchgut Island, Sydney, New South Wales</i></p> <p><i>Fortification</i></p> <p><i>Design by George Barney</i></p> <p><i>Completed 1857</i></p>	 <p><i>Figure 260. Fort Denison. (Source: NSW National Parks and Wildlife Service, accessed January 2024)</i></p> <p>Statement of Significance from the Fort Denison listing on the State Heritage Register:</p> <p><i>Fort Denison is of national and international significance as an exceptionally fine and intact example of a nineteenth century defence fortification that is unique within Australia. Located in Sydney Harbour, neighbouring the Sydney Opera House and the Sydney Harbour Bridge, Fort Denison is a landmark that represents colonial Australian settlement. Fort Denison is associated with several phases of Australian history. As an island it was used as a place by local Aboriginal people for food and pleasure, and was used by European settlers as a place for incarceration and exploitation of convict labour. The island was then modified for defensive use firstly as a Battery and then as a Fort. As a Fort it demonstrates the administration and politics of the British Empire and the need for defensive structures in the colonies. For most of the 20th century the island and Fort took on a maritime role. It continues to be reference point for tide measurement and changing navigation techniques. Fort Denison is the only island site entirely covered with a fortification within Sydney Harbour and retains the integrity of its completed 1862 form. In an international context, the combination of a Martello tower and associated barracks is unusual and rare. The Fort built entirely of local sandstone, demonstrates the evolution from an island to convict shaped rock battery, to a completed Fort. The Martello tower on Fort Denison is unique as a European styled coastal fort constructed in Australia. It is of international significance as one of only two towers in the southern hemisphere that survive intact. It forms part of a worldwide group of similarly styled and dated European coastal fort towers built during this period. The tower is also of international significance for the integrity of its original casemated ordnance and sidearms. Fort Denison is recognised by the people of Sydney as an historic fortification that remains an enduring feature in a changing harbour context. The very nature of its</i></p>




Item	Photo and Description
	<p><i>massive sandstone construction, combined with its isolation and comparative inaccessibility, adds to its mystique and its landmark status with Sydney Harbour.</i></p> <p>It is currently listed on the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ NSW State Heritage Register, no. 00985;</li> <li>▪ State Environmental Planning Policy (Biodiversity and Conservation) 2021, no. 123;</li> <li>▪ NSW National Parks and Wildlife Service s170 Register, and</li> <li>▪ Register of the National Trust (NSW), gazetted on 11/02/1974.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Bare Island Fort</b></p> <p><i>Bare Island Road, La Perouse, New South Wales</i></p> <p><i>Fortification</i></p> <p><i>Design by Peter Scratchley to a specification by William Jervois</i></p> <p><i>Completed 1890</i></p>	 <p><i>Figure 261. Bare Island Fort aerial view. (Source: NSW National Parks and Wildlife Service, accessed January 2024)</i></p> <p>Statement of Significance from the Bare Island Fort listing on the State Heritage Register:</p> <p><i>Bare Island is nationally significant as an almost completely intact example of late nineteenth century coastal defence technology. Designed by Sir Peter Scratchley to a specification by William Jervoise, it represents one of the more substantial and impressive of the many fortifications built around Australasia. The Fort reflects the evolution of the relationship between New South Wales as an increasingly independent colony and Britain. It shows the way that strategic defence policy was operating in Australia on the eve of Federation. The Fort is also nationally significant as the site of the first War Veterans Home founded in Australia. This reflects the social and moral obligations felt by Australians early this century to the veterans of wars fought across the British Empire. It is an early major construction from mass concrete, at a time when the use of this material was still uncommon and not well understood. The Fort is of State significance for its pivotal role in the closure of the career of James Barnet, NSW Colonial Architect. It has significant impacts on the way publicly funded construction was carried out in New South Wales after that time. The Fort is regionally significant as the only island in Botany Bay. The form of the island has been changed by the construction of the Fort, to present a functional structure which nonetheless is of high aesthetic value. It is an important example of fortification design which demonstrates the evolution of the theory of coastal defence, the technology of defence and coastal fortification design. The Fort is regionally significant to the general community as part of the</i></p>

Item	Photo and Description
	<p><i>recreational and historic landscape of Botany Bay. Bare Island has particular local significance to the La Perouse community as an item of local heritage value</i></p> <p>It is currently listed on the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ NSW State Heritage Register, no. 00978;</li> <li>▪ Randwick Local Environmental Plan 2012, no. 1171;</li> <li>▪ NSW National Parks and Wildlife Service s170 register; and</li> <li>▪ Register of the National Trust (NSW), no. 6721.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Georges Head Fortifications Complex</b></p> <p><i>Middle Head Road, Georges Heights, New South Wales</i></p> <p><i>Fortification</i></p> <p><i>Design primarily by James Barnet for buildings constructed pre-1900</i></p>	 <p><i>Figure 262. Georges Head Fortifications Complex, Artillery Barracks building. (Source: Australian Heritage Photographic Library, accessed January 2024)</i></p> <p>Statement of Significance from the Georges Head Military Fortifications listing on the State Heritage Inventory:</p> <p><i>Georges Heights and in particular the Officer's mess precinct is culturally significant for the important role it played in the strategic defence of Sydney. This commenced with the initial fortification phase in 1871(-1884) and extended through the submarine mine defence phase (1884-1922), the federation of Australian States and thus it became part of the wider coastal network of defences.</i></p> <p><i>The site is part of the network of fortifications that were established to protect Sydney Harbour from attack. Alterations to the A84 Battery show the continual evolution and development of defensive systems and the application of the most modern technology and building techniques.</i></p> <p><i>The buildings in the precinct illustrate the evolution of defence accommodation from the 1871 Barracks (later the Officer's Mess) to 1892 Married Quarters (now Gunshot Alley) to the 1954 separate individual rooms (Officers' Mess Accommodation).</i></p> <p><i>The buildings have been associated with key people in NSW history particularly;</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>colonial architect James Barnet who was one of Australia's greatest architects and designed the original Barracks (now Officers' Mess); and</i></li> </ul>



Item	Photo and Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>FR de Wolski, Engineer-in-Chief of Defence Works around 1890 and who contributed to the establishment of Gunshot Alley.</i></li> </ul> <p><i>The site has remained in government and military ownership from the earliest British settlement and thus provides strong research potential in its structures and surface cultural deposits to demonstrate past ways of military life. The construction of fortifications on the site followed the departure of British Imperial forces in 1870 and is evidence of the British Government's resolve that colonies with responsible government should bear the cost of their own defence.</i></p> <p><i>George's Head has outstanding aesthetic values as a prominent headland. The site is valued by the local community and Defence personnel for its role as a vantage point and as a gateway to the harbour. It is also a rare remnant of fragile natural environment, and is also valued for its historical uses.</i></p> <p><i>George's Head is part of the Middle Head and George's Heights defence site listed on the Register of the National Estate, and contains three separate independent listings, the A84 Battery, Battery C9A and the 1873 Officers' Mess building.</i></p> <p>It is currently listed on the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Commonwealth Heritage List, no. 105541 (Chowder Bay Barracks Group);</li> <li>▪ NSW State Heritage Register, no. 00987;</li> <li>▪ NSW National Parks and Wildlife Service s170 Register;</li> <li>▪ Mosman Local Environmental Plan 2012, no. I463;</li> <li>▪ Register of the National Trust (NSW).</li> </ul>
<p><b>Garden Island Defence Precinct</b></p> <p><i>Cowper Wharf Road, Garden Island, New South Wales</i></p> <p><i>Naval Base</i></p> <p><i>Design by James Barnet for buildings constructed 1883-1896</i></p>	 <p><i>Figure 263. Garden Island Defence Precinct, former barracks building. (Source: Australian Heritage Photographic Library, accessed January 2024)</i></p> <p>Statement of Significance from the Garden Island Defence Precinct listing on the State Heritage Inventory:</p> <p><i>Sydney Harbour Naval Precinct is of state significance for the role played by the Royal Navy and then the Royal Australian Navy in the development and growth of Sydney as an imperial and then as a global city. It has long associations with</i></p>


Item	Photo and Description
	<p><i>victualling and repairing naval vessels and other similar maritime defence activities. Garden Island in particular is significant as a place of the earliest contacts between Aboriginal people and colonists, and is important in the course of introducing and establishing European gardening and cultivation techniques and food plant species. The precinct is important in understanding the patterns of recreational use in the harbour and the development of a harbourside public domain. The precinct has important associations with historically significant people, notably king Bungaree, Governor Lachlan Macquarie, Commodore Loring, Rear Admiral Tyron, and Colonial Architect James Barnet. The precinct provides ample evidence of the technological innovations in the design and construction of machinery for the specialised needs of maintaining naval vessels. The whole precinct makes a notable contribution to the characteristic beauty of Sydney Harbour, and retains a sense of being a low-lying island set against the high-rise Sydney CBD. Significant associations have long existed between the precinct and RN and RAN personnel on active service and in retirement. The precinct retains an ability to yield significant archaeological evidence, both maritime and terrestrial, on the settlement of Sydney and the development of naval facilities. The precinct is rare as the the only example of a fleet base in New South Wales, and illustrates the combination of industrial, military and recreational uses that have characterised the shores and islands of Sydney Harbour since 1788.</i></p> <p>It is currently listed on the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Commonwealth Heritage List, no. 105286 (overall site)</li> <li>▪ NSW State Heritage Register, no. 01705 (Sydney Harbour Naval Precinct);</li> <li>▪ State Environmental Planning Policy (Biodiversity and Conservation) 2021, no. 81; and</li> <li>▪ Register of the National Trust (NSW), no. 6209 (Sydney Harbour Naval Precinct).</li> </ul>
<p><b>Fort Queenscliff</b></p> <p><i>Gellibrand Street, Queenscliff, Victoria</i></p> <p><i>Fortification</i></p> <p><i>Design by Peter Scratchley and William Jervois</i></p> <p><i>Original complex completed 1890</i></p>	 <p><i>Figure 264. Fort Queenscliff, fortification. (Source: Australian Heritage Photographic Library, accessed January 2024)</i></p>




Item	Photo and Description
	<p>Statement of Significance from the Fort Queenscliff listing on the Australian Heritage Database:</p> <p><i>Fort Queenscliff, developed from 1860 onwards, is historically significant for its association with Victoria's, and Australia's, military history. The Fort was begun as a result of fears of foreign aggression and was further developed in the latter part of the nineteenth century amid renewed concerns about attack. The Fort was the first and the primary defence site for Port Phillip Bay and played a command role in relation to the other fortifications around the heads of the bay. Fort Queenscliff was a key element in making the bay the most heavily defended British port in the southern hemisphere at the time. During the twentieth century, as the strategic importance of coastal defences was revised, the Fort became a central instructional college for army officers. The Fort continues to play a defence role, after more than 140 years of operation. The Fort also has strong associations with the early maritime history of Melbourne and Port Phillip Bay. Its role as a navigational aid and signalling post are significant, especially as the earliest such structures around the bay were constructed on this site. The Telegraph Station is the second oldest such building in Victoria. (Criteria A.4 and B.2) (Themes: 7.7 Defending Australia, 7.7.1 Providing for the common defence, 3.8.1 Shipping to and from Australian ports, 3.8.3 Developing harbour facilities. 3.7 Establishing communications.)</i></p> <p><i>The seaward and landward defences, together with the other elements of the site, all help to illustrate the evolution of military technology during the latter nineteenth and early twentieth centuries. The magazines, gun emplacements, earthworks, sea wall and Fort wall, seaward ditch/dry moat, keep, offices, barracks, parade ground and other features, and the spatial relationships between all these elements all help to convey the changing requirements of the defence forces over time, and simultaneously combine to represent a very valuable example of a coastal fort developed over the period. (Criteria B.2 and D.2)</i></p> <p><i>The landward defences of the wall and the now-filled ditch are among the last uses of such centuries-old ideas in Australia. The wall and the keep have no equivalent in Victoria and are among the most substantial of any Scratchley-inspired fort in Australia. The wall is an outstanding example of masonry construction, and the keep is especially notable for its very distinctive character. The mass unreinforced concrete and exposed and rendered brick vaulting of the seaward defences are on a scale rarely seen elsewhere. (Criteria B.2 and F.1)</i></p> <p><i>Fort Queenscliff is significant for its associations with leading military thinkers of the late nineteenth century. Lieutenant Colonel Peter Scratchley and Major General Sir William Jervis advised on Queenscliff's design and travelled the Australian colonies assisting with fortifications elsewhere. (Criterion H.1)</i></p> <p><i>The town of Queenscliff has developed with the fort and the complex is of considerable social value to the local community. Further, as the Australian Staff College for more than fifty years, the place is of strong social significance to numerous army officers who trained at the college. (Criterion G.1)</i></p> <p><i>Fort Queenscliff possesses notable aesthetic qualities. It is prominently located on the coast and is a major element of the townscape, featuring a number of landmarks such as the lighthouse and the landward wall and keep. The wall and keep also provide a clear division between the military and civilian precincts of the town. (Criterion E.1)</i></p> <p>It is currently listed on the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Commonwealth Heritage List, no. 105417;</li> <li>▪ Victorian Heritage Register, no. VHR H2367 (Shortlands Bluff);</li> </ul>

Item	Photo and Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Victorian Heritage Inventory, no. H7821-0002;</li> <li>▪ Victorian War Heritage Inventory, no. 125980; and</li> <li>▪ Register of the National Trust (Vic), no. 69576.</li> </ul>

### 3.7.3. New Zealand Coastal Fortifications

Item	Photo and Description
<p><b>Fort Ballance</b></p> <p><i>Te Motu Kairangi /Miramar Peninsula, Wellington, New Zealand</i></p> <p>Fortification</p> <p>Design by Henry Cautley</p> <p>Completed 1895</p>	 <p><i>Figure 265. Fort Ballance, fortification. (Source: Wellington City Heritage, accessed February 2024)</i></p> <p>Statement of Significance from the Fort Ballance listing on the Heritage New Zealand database:</p> <p><b>Historic Significance</b></p> <p><i>Historical Significance or Value:</i></p> <p><i>Fort Ballance and the associated positions on Point Gordon have historical significance resulting from their role in national defence. The coastal defences were built to strengthen the major ports against the threat of Russian expansion in the Pacific. Fort Ballance was the premier fort in the Wellington area for 26 years (1885-1911).</i></p> <p><b>Physical Significance</b></p> <p><i>Architectural Quality:</i></p>



Item	Photo and Description
	<p><i>Constructed in the 1880s Fort Ballance was prominent in Wellington's coastal defence network and today has the most significant remains of any of the forts built in and around Wellington at this time.</i></p> <p><i>Used by the military over a period of 60 years (1885-1945), the 1880s layout of Fort Ballance is largely unaltered and a good impression of the original nineteenth century fort remains. The fort is a permanent reminder of the technology used in the coastal defence network of the 1880s and it is an early example of the use of concrete as a building material.</i></p> <p><i>Townscape/Landmark Value:</i></p> <p><i>Designed as a coastal defence position, Fort Ballance was and still is camouflaged by earthworks, trees and bushes. It is largely hidden from general view except from above or near at hand.</i></p> <p>The site is included on the New Zealand Heritage List/Rārangi Kōrero as a Historic Place Category 1, no. 5074.</p>
<p><b>Fort Jervois</b></p> <p><i>Ripapa Island, Christchurch, New Zealand</i></p> <p><i>Fortification</i></p> <p><i>Design by Lt. Colonel Tudor Boddam</i></p> <p><i>Completed 1895</i></p>	 <p><i>Figure 266. Aerial view of Fort Jervois, Lyttelton Harbour. (Source: NZ History, accessed February 2024)</i></p> <p>Statement of Significance from the Fort Jervois listing on the Heritage New Zealand database:</p> <p><b>Historic Significance</b></p> <p><i>Historical Significance or Value:</i></p> <p><i>As a former pa site and quarantine station Ripapa Island has secured a place within the history of Canterbury, but it is as a coastal defence battery with 'disappearing' gun emplacements that the island achieves international significance. In addition to Ripapa Island's value and interest as a coastal fortification its use as a prison for Maori from Parihaka, Compulsory Military Training defaulters and the flamboyant Count von Luckner enhances its historical significance within New Zealand and widens the appeal of the island's history.</i></p> <p><b>Physical Significance</b></p> <p><i>Architectural Quality:</i></p> <p><i>A well preserved example of a 'Russian Scare' fort and one of the last of its kind in the Commonwealth, Fort Jervois is particularly significant because it boasts two breech-loading guns mounted on extremely rare hydro-pneumatic carriages which</i></p>

Item	Photo and Description
	<p><i>are still in reasonable condition. Installed on Ripapa at the suggestion of Sir William Jervois, who was "the most experienced, [and perhaps the finest] military engineer of his time" [Honman, 1986, p.13], these guns "were for many years the largest and most powerful pieces of ordnance in the colony" [Barratt, 1981, p.86]. The extensive use of concrete throughout the fort is also of great interest.</i></p> <p><i>Townscape/Landmark Value:</i></p> <p><i>Lying just off the eastern headland of Purau Bay, Ripapa Island is a distinctive feature within Lyttelton Harbour, although the full extent of the island's fortifications cannot be appreciated without first going ashore.</i></p> <p>The site is included on the New Zealand Heritage List/Rārangi Kōrero as a Historic Place Category 1, no. 5306.</p>

### 3.7.4. Time guns

Since 2013, the Fort Scratchley Historical Society has reinstated the seafaring tradition of firing a time gun at 1pm to coincide with the Newcastle Customs House time ball drop. This tradition was used in ports around the world in the nineteenth century to allow sea captains to adjust their navigation instruments. In 2015, the Historical Society fired their recently restored Nordenfelt gun which was originally installed in 1892 as a defence gun to protect Newcastle's Harbour entrance and was last used in 1914 as a daily time gun.

Other Australian ports similarly utilised a time gun associated with the dropping of a time ball at a nearby observatory or customs house, including Fort Denison in Sydney, Hobart Town from 1863-1923, Fremantle Roundhouse from 1900, and Perth Observatory from 1902. This tradition has also been observed overseas including in New Zealand with the lowering of time balls in Wellington from 1864, Dunedin from 1868, and Lyttelton from 1876.

The time gun at Fort Denison was originally fired from its location at Fort Macquarie following the construction of the time ball at the Observatory in 1858 and was eventually transferred to Dawes Point before transferring to Fort Denison in 1906. The Fort Denison gun is the earliest gun used for this purpose in Australia which still undertakes the same role.<sup>116</sup>

<sup>116</sup> "Fort Denison: Conservation Management Plan," (Sydney: NSW Government Office of Environment and Heritage, 2019), 87.



## 4. ASSESSMENT OF HERITAGE SIGNIFICANCE

### 4.1. Heritage Council of New South Wales Heritage Criteria

Heritage significance, cultural significance and cultural value are all terms used to describe an item's value or importance to our own society. This value may be contained in the fabric of an item, its setting and its relationship to other items, the response that the item stimulates to those who value it now and in the historical record that allow us to understand it in its own context. An assessment of what is significant is not static. Significance may increase, or decrease, as more is learnt about the past or as items become rare, endangered or are found to document or illustrate aspects that achieve a new recognition of importance.

The historical analysis and physical evidence provides the context for assessing significance, which is made by applying standard evaluation criteria to the development and associations of an item. The Heritage Council of NSW has produced standard evaluation criteria that are compatible with the values contained in The Burra Charter.

For an item to be assessed for inclusion on the State Heritage Register by the Heritage Council of NSW, it will demonstrate one or more of the State Heritage criteria. The values embodied in the criteria generally relate to:

- natural heritage values of places;
- Aboriginal heritage values of places; and
- historic heritage values of places.

The level of significance of an item is determined by its value relative to other comparable items, be they in a local, regional, national, or international context. The rarity and/or representativeness of the item are considered as part of the overall analysis of its significance.

The heritage criteria for listing at the State or Local level in NSW, as informed by the State of NSW and Department of Planning and Environment's *Assessing Heritage Significance* guidelines (2023) are:

<b>Criterion (a)</b> <b>(Historic significance)</b>	an item is important in the course, or pattern, of NSW's cultural or natural history (or the cultural or natural history of the local area)
<b>Criterion (b)</b> <b>(Historical association)</b>	an item has strong or special association with the life or works of a person, or group of persons, of importance in NSW's cultural or natural history (or the cultural or natural history of the local area)
<b>Criterion (c)</b> <b>(Aesthetic/creative/technical achievement)</b>	an item is important in demonstrating aesthetic characteristics and/or a high degree of creative or technical achievement in NSW (or the local area)
<b>Criterion (d)</b> <b>(Social, cultural, and spiritual)</b>	an item has strong or special association with a particular community or cultural group in NSW (or the local area) for social, cultural or spiritual reasons
<b>Criterion (e)</b> <b>(Research potential)</b>	an item has potential to yield information that will contribute to an understanding of NSW's cultural or natural history (or the cultural or natural history of the local area)
<b>Criterion (f)</b> <b>(Rare)</b>	an item possesses uncommon, rare or endangered aspects of NSW's cultural or natural history (or the cultural or natural history of the local area)
<b>Criterion (g)</b> <b>(Representative)</b>	an item is important in demonstrating the principal characteristics of a class of NSW's cultural or natural places; or cultural or natural environments (or a class of the local area's cultural or natural places; or cultural or natural environments)

#### 4.1.1. Threshold for inclusion

The Heritage Council of NSW recognises four levels of heritage significance in NSW, namely Local, State, National, and World. Levels indicate the context in which a heritage place is important, rather than ranking. The threshold for inclusion on the State Heritage Register is importance or significance in NSW.

An item has local significance when it is important to the local community. These places are significant within the context of a local area and may contribute to the individuality and streetscape, townscape, landscape or natural character of an area and are matters controlled by local government.

## 4.2. Heritage Significance Assessment

### 4.2.1. Basis of Assessment

In assessing the cultural significance of a place, it is necessary to adequately research and consider all the information relevant to an understanding of the place and its fabric. The Burra Charter defines cultural significance as "aesthetic, historic, scientific, social or spiritual value for past, present or future generations".

The assessment of cultural significance is undertaken because it is necessary to understand the values of a heritage item before making decisions about the future of the item. This then leads to decisions that will retain these heritage values in the future.<sup>117</sup> In NSW, heritage items are assessed against criteria set by the NSW Heritage Council. This framework outlines seven assessment criterion that encompass possible values of cultural significance informed by principles of the Burra Charter.

### 4.2.2. Assessment Criteria

The following assessment has been adapted from the Suters Architects assessment of significance against Commonwealth Heritage List and NSW Heritage Council criteria and the State Heritage Register listing for the Coal River Precinct (SHR item no. 01674). Where no information was provided in the form, CPH has undertaken the necessary assessment.

- **Criterion (a) Historic Significance**

***An item is important in the course, or pattern, of NSW's cultural or natural history (or the cultural or natural history of the local area)***

#### **2008 Heritage Management Plan**

*Signal Hill has historical associations dating to the earliest convict settlement of Newcastle, and was the source of the first coal deposits mined in the region. The first coal to be exported from Australia is reputed to have originated from Signal Hill.*

*Signal Hill was the site of navigational control of the port of Newcastle for 99 years from 1815 until 1914.*

*From 1882, Fort Scratchley was an important site in the course of Australian history, in the development of coastal defences in NSW and in the defence of the city of Newcastle. Signal Hill was the site of a range of permanent defence installations since the 1860's, representing over 110 years of continuous military presence.*

*Fort Scratchley is physical evidence of the evolutionary development in changing armaments and military technology. The development of the site may be readily interpreted through investigation of the layering and interface of remaining structures.*

*Signal Hill and Fort Scratchley were associated with the formation of Newcastle's Voluntary Militia Forces and were part of the eastern states Voluntary Forces Network.*

---

<sup>117</sup> NSW Department of Planning and Environment, "Assessing Heritage Significance: Guidelines for assessing places and objects against the Heritage Council of NSW criteria.", accessed February 1, 2024, <https://www.environment.nsw.gov.au/-/media/OEH/Corporate-Site/Documents/Heritage/assessing-heritage-significance-guidelines-assessing-places-objects-against-criteria-230167.pdf>, 12.



*Fort Scratchley has the distinction of being 'The only Australian fort to have fired in action at an enemy surface target'. Fort Scratchley was the scene of a hostile encounter with Japanese forces during World War II, when shots were fired at a submarine in response to shell fire directed at the BHP Steelworks and the east end of Newcastle. In comparison, the coastal defence forts of other southern Australia cities saw action only in the form of warning shots for identification of shipping on several occasions.*

### **Coal River Precinct SHR Listing**

*Coal River is the site of historic and continuous Aboriginal occupation, the evidence of which merits further study.(Hunter, C., 2001/HO).*

*Coal River is important in the natural history of New South Wales because its resources provided Australia's first commercial export product, coal, as well as essential fuel for the Sydney settlement, and the timber and lime resources that supported the development of Sydney's built environment.*

*Coal River is important to the cultural history of Australia. Convict heritage provides the foundation theme of modern Australia. Convict lives dominated the early political and cultural landscape of New South Wales; much of Australia's early economic success was the result of convict labour, as is demonstrated by these precincts.*

*Coal River was the first penal settlement for secondary offenders established within the penal colony of New South Wales. It is significant for providing major evidence of convict colonisation and of the interrelated work and punishment orientated regime of daily life.*

*Coal River provides evidence of the role of the British military in the foundation of Australian colonial settlements.*

*Coal River, 1800 to 1821, has absolute association with convict transportation and British military guardianship. From 1821 to 1855 there evolved at Coal River a particular example of its subsequent integration with civil society and institutions.*

### **CPH**

CPH concurs with the above assessment and concludes that Fort Scratchley and Signal Hill is of state historical significance as evidence of early convict settlement of the Newcastle region, for its importance as an early site of coal extraction and production for the emerging colony of NSW, its importance in broader Australian history in the development of coastal defences in NSW and in the defence of the city of Newcastle, and demonstrates the evolution of armaments and other military technology as part of its incorporation within Newcastle's wider defence system

Fort Scratchley is also important as the site of the only coastal fortification that fired guns in anger at an enemy vessel during the Second World War on 7-8 June 1942.

#### **▪ Criterion (b) Historical Association**

***An item has strong or special association with the life or works of a person, or group of persons, of importance in NSW's cultural or natural history (or the cultural or natural history of the local area)***

### **2008 Heritage Management Plan**

*Fort Scratchley is associated with the military planning and design of British Military Engineering specialist, Lieutenant Colonel (later Sir Peter) Scratchley and Colonel (later Sir William) Jervois, both achieving eminence in their field during their lifetimes and long after during Australia's later years of colonial administration.*

*The Commandant's Cottage, the barracks and guardhouse were designed by Gustave Morrell, an architect within the Colonial Architect's Office, with involvement and oversighting by Colonial architect James Barnet. James Barnet had already achieved acclaim for his prolific portfolio of late C19th public buildings in NSW, including Newcastle Customs House within sight of Fort Scratchley.*

### **Coal River Precinct SHR Listing**

*Coal River is the site of historic and continuous Aboriginal occupation, whose evidence merits further study.*

*Coal River has significant associations with people and events in Australian history, which await dissemination. For example, John Platt merits recognition, as a pioneer of modern mining methods in the Southern Hemisphere. The roles of Governors Hunter, King and Macquarie are significant. The Castle Hill rebellion played a significant part in the 1804 settlement at Coal River, as the place of secondary punishment for the Vinegar Hill rebels. Coal River's convict population awaits identification and evaluation, for example, the supporters of Governor Bligh when overthrown by the military, were exiled to Newcastle. The military commandants and other holders of administrative positions merit evaluation for their contribution to the organisation of Coal River. Evidence of their influence should be revealed. Mariners sailing the coast and those who worked in the harbour could be recognised, as well as their ships. In more recent times, Fort Scratchley was the only fortification in NSW to receive and return enemy fire, during WWII, an event still accessible, no doubt to oral historians.*

*The educational and public interest value of this information can be used to great advantage in cultural industries today.*

*(Hunter, C., 2001/HO)*

## CPH

CPH concurs with the above assessments and concludes that Fort Scratchley is of state significance for its association with Sirs Peter Scratchley and William Jervis, who were commissioned to advise on Australian colonial defences during the mid to late nineteenth century. Scratchley and Jervis also advised on the design of numerous other forts such as Bare Island Fort, the Georges Head Fortifications, and Fort Queenscliff in Victoria.

The barracks complex comprising of the Commandant's Cottage, Barracks, NCOs' Quarters, Canteen and Old Guardhouse is also of state significance for its connection to the NSW Colonial Architect's Office. The complex contributes to an understanding of the works produced by the Office in the late Victorian period. The designs were primarily undertaken by Gustavus Morrell, an architect within the Colonial Architect's Office, with involvement and oversight from Colonial Architect James Barnet. James Barnet had already achieved acclaim for his prolific portfolio of late nineteenth century public buildings in NSW, including Newcastle Customs House which is visible from Fort Scratchley.

The site is also significant for its associations with the key figures of the Vinegar Hill convict rebellion, including the convicts, Governors Hunter, King and Macquarie, who catalysed the settlement of the area as a site of secondary punishment for rebels associated with the uprising.

### ▪ Criterion (c) Aesthetic/Creative/Technical Achievement

***An item is important in demonstrating aesthetic characteristics and/or a high degree of creative or technical achievement in NSW (or the local area)***

#### **2008 Heritage Management Plan**

*Viewed from the sea, the fort structures are deliberately inconspicuous, defensively blending into the profile of Signal Hill. However from the land, the fort complex presents a formidable stronghold, visually impenetrable by the austere surrounding walls, protective moat and guarded bridge access. Very few of the Australian coastal fortifications can compare with the classical military aesthetic demonstrated by Fort Scratchley.*

*The elevated site is set against a backdrop of spectacular coastline to the east and panoramic views of the city and Hunter River to the south and west. The defensive ramparts protecting the city of Newcastle and the Hunter River expresses the visual quality of an iconic fort, both for its geographical location and physical form, unlike any other defence complex in Australia. The visual qualities and impact of the fort as a prominent landmark in the city of Newcastle is greatly enhanced by its spectacular setting. The site reinforces the close links between the city, the port and the sea.*

*The architectural quality of the fort structures is restrained but designed to high level of competence, and is dominated by the military engineer designed fortifications. Simplified Regency stylistic elements however are evident in the important buildings designed for people, the Commandants Cottage, the Barracks and the Guard house.*



*The intact Nineteenth century battery complex, associated barracks buildings and military structures enhanced by its spectacular coastal headland position, is unsurpassed by any other comparable site in Australia.*

*Fort Scratchley and the Signal Hill site represent a range of periods of defensive technology and its continuous development between 1860 and 1972. The fabric of the structure has interpretive value in the investigation and understanding of the evolution and development of coastal military technology over a period of more than 110 years. It is the combination of intact innovative technology associated with a long period of historical development that sets this site apart from comparable sites in Australia. The fort structures are significant for their use of reinforced concrete construction, a technology that in the 1880s was rare in civil engineering and construction. Some slab elements are reinforced with bullhead profile rail, relics from the pioneering railway development in the Hunter, using imported iron rails. Military features of Fort Scratchley which were particularly innovative in technical and scientific terms in relation to the development of contemporary fort batteries during the late Nineteenth century include:*

- *Shell Lifts: A very rare and significant engineering feature of Fort Scratchley is the system of three iron and chain shell lifts servicing the gun positions.*
- *Tunnel Lighting: The tunnel lighting system at Fort Scratchley is of particular quality and significance; even on a world scale.*
- *Casemate Lighting: Another very rare asset of the Fort has been the world-class reconstruction of the 'Tremletts Pattern Fighting Lamp'.*
- *Gun Control Systems: Evidence remains of Depression Range Finders of the 1880s; the extended Battery Observation Post of WWI – II.*
- *Battery Observation Post: This building retains many internal features which are evidence of former range finding and other installations, and is a rare intact example of its type in Australia.*
- *Mines Firing Station Observation Post: The mines firing station is a rare element.*

### **Coal River Precinct SHR Listing**

*Part of the Precincts occupy distinctive landforms whose significance in local Aboriginal cultural traditions merits further investigation.*

*Coal River inaugurated resource extraction and industry in Australia's major coal export port and industrial city. It is also the site of the first use of the board and pillar coal extraction method in Australia, thereby placing mining in Australia in 1801 at the technical forefront of world mining practices. This indicates transference of technology around the world. That a convict, John Platt, implemented this transfer is particularly significant. The Coal River Precincts occupy a scenic part of the city and their main and secondary sites contribute significantly to the townscape and attractions of Newcastle and Newcastle East. The combination of harbour, nineteenth and early twentieth century buildings and Signal Hill forms one of the finest coastal and maritime townscapes in New South Wales.*

*(Hunter, C., 2001/HO)*

### **CPH**

CPH concurs with the 2008 HMP assessment and concludes that Fort Scratchley is of State heritage significance as a demonstration of fortification design principles that derive from English military planning. The site is also highly significant as it evidences continuous adaptation and development of the site in response to the emerging needs of defence fortifications prompted by advances in military technologies. The site also evidences a high degree of technical achievement, as seen in, amongst other things, the early use of reinforced concrete construction, the tunnel lighting and ventilation system, the ammunition lift system, and observation posts and associated gun control systems.

CPH requires further research to provide commentary on the assessment provided in the Coal River Precinct SHR listing.

▪ **Criterion (d) Social, Cultural, and Spiritual**

***An item has strong or special association with a particular community or cultural group in NSW (or the local area) for social, cultural, or spiritual reasons***

**2008 Heritage Management Plan**

*This is demonstrated in the determination of former personnel of the AWAS, RAEME Defence Reserves and Regular Army to establish a military museum at the fort in the early 1980s. Volunteer military forces were first established at Fort Scratchley in 1860 to man the Fort garrison, one of the earliest volunteer regiments formed in the colony of NSW. On 8 June 1995, a plaque was unveiled at the Fort commemorating the 53rd anniversary of the shelling of Newcastle and return fire by Fort Scratchley in 1942. In a ceremony conducted by the Prime Minister in 2002, Fort Scratchley was “dedicated to all the serving and ex-service men and women of Australia”, thus reinforcing the connection with site by former servicemen. Fort Scratchley is important to the people of Newcastle as a major tourist attraction, and as a complex with major scenic and historical qualities.*

**Coal River Precinct SHR Listing**

*The Aboriginal presence in this area predates European contact and has been continuous to the present day. The associations, over time, of particular places, sites and areas of the Precincts and of their distinctive landforms with Aboriginal culture will be revealed, as permissible, through further consultation and study. Descendants of the early generation of convict workers that founded Newcastle as an industrial city take pride in the contribution of their forebears. However, research needs to be undertaken to identify the convict workforce.*

*Coal River has significance as the place of contact between Aboriginal and European people in the northern region. Aboriginal people continued to frequent the locality during the convict era and their descendants continue to live in the Newcastle area.*

**CPH**

CPH concurs with the above assessments and concludes that Fort Scratchley has strong and special associations with the many defence personnel (and their families) who were trained or stationed at the complex in its 90 years of operation as a defence site and to military historians. There is also potential to uncover further associations with the site and other community groups such as local Aboriginal organisations and historians interested in Australia's convict history.

▪ **Criterion (e) Research Potential**

***An item has potential to yield information that will contribute to an understanding of NSW's cultural or natural history (or the cultural or natural history of the local area)***

**2008 Heritage Management Plan**

*Fort Scratchley and Signal Hill demonstrate a range of periods of military technology with the potential to yield information about the organisational structure of coastal defence in Australia between 1820 and the mid 20th Century. The site contains numerous places and items with archaeological potential including the gun emplacements and tunnels, and sites of former buildings and structures, the dry moat and the surrounding open grounds. This diversity of items encompassing such a long period of development is not available at any other comparable site in Australia.*

**Coal River Precinct SHR Listing**

*The Precincts' significance to Aboriginal people requires further investigation. Its distinctive landforms are likely to have a role in local traditional knowledge. Evidence of Aboriginal activities will probably occur within the Precincts, wherever European development has not destroyed it.*

*Investigation of the convict coalmines may reveal the skills and technical achievements of Australia's first coal miners...Coal River demonstrates the capabilities of the convict workforce to undertake not only mining, but also quarrying, timber getting, lime burning, building and industrial trades, farming and gardening, navigation and harbour work, as well as improvising in a frontier environment.*



*Coal River invites further archaeological investigations that may reveal the routines of daily life for both the convict and military population, especially convict coalmining, quarrying and pier building, additional to that contained in documentation.*

*Fort Scratchley makes a considerable contribution to the military history of New South Wales. It was a significant part of the anti Russian defences of the colony as the defences of Port Jackson. In fact, Fort Scratchley survives as the most concentrated and complete example of the whole system and certainly the one with the best exemplified changing military history.*

#### **CPH**

CPH concurs with the above assessments and concludes that the site has potential to yield further information about the cultural history of the Newcastle region, as an early site of secondary punishment in the early NSW colony and as a site that demonstrates the evolution of military operations and technology in Australia. In addition, due to the presence of Aboriginal places around Fort Scratchley and the wider Coal River Precinct, further archaeological investigation and social consultation with relevant local Aboriginal organisations such as the Awabakal LALC, may yield further information about ongoing associations with the site as well as historical information about Aboriginal cultural life separate to European settlement of the area.

- **Criterion (f) Rare**

***An item possesses uncommon, rare, or endangered aspects of NSW's cultural or natural history (or the cultural or natural history of the local area)***

#### **2008 Heritage Management Plan**

*Fort Scratchley is important as a rare example of a closed coastal battery fortress as evidenced in the planning as a defensive complex, and in the fabric of the place including casemates, barbettes, tunnels and armoury complex, barracks and other support buildings, parade ground and protective wall and dry moat.*

#### **Coal River Precinct SHR Listing**

*Coal River, a convict/military settlement for prisoners guilty of colonial offences is one of few such convict settlements in Australia, and was the earliest such settlement. Evidence of convict workplaces, coal mining, pier building, quarrying, and other activities are rare in Australia. The role of British military in the foundation of colonial society is little studied and the example of Coal River could make a valuable contribution to cultural studies. The period of transition from military rule to civil administration is of great interest and educational value and is rare in Australian settlement history and society. (Hunter, C., 2001/HO)*

#### **CPH**

CPH concurs with the above assessments and concludes that Fort Scratchley is of State significance as a rare surviving example of a coastal fortification in NSW whose design was informed by the designs of Jervis and Scratchley, as evidenced by its spatial configuration and the built fabric at the site, including the casemate batteries, barbettes, tunnels and barracks complex, and other supporting structures within the subject site. The site is also significant as it demonstrates evidence of the early coal mining activities associated with the initial convict settlement of the Newcastle area.

- **Criterion (g) Representative**

***An item is important in demonstrating the principal characteristics of a class of NSW's cultural or natural places; or cultural or natural environments (or a class of the local area's cultural or natural places; or cultural or natural environments)***

#### **2008 Heritage Management Plan**

*The design and planning of the site clearly continue the Colonial closed fortress concept which reflected British design precedent, imported by Scratchley and Jervis. The layout of the fort and its armaments are typical of military planning, reflecting the influence of English and colonial military installations*

designed by the Royal Engineers. The British colonial influence is evident in the original design and subsequent upgrading of the site, and is one of the most representative examples of colonial defence installations in Australia. Bare Island has a similar heritage and origins of design to Fort Scratchley, however Fort Scratchley is unique for a coastal battery in Australia in its capacity to demonstrate the development in military technology from 1882 until after World War 2. All phases of this development may be interpreted in the fabric of the structures. The separation of the ranks and hierarchy of the officer ranks is expressed in the layout of the buildings, and the relative standards of accommodation of the Commandant's cottage, the barracks buildings and separate ablutions for officers, NCOs' and soldiers.

### Coal River Precinct SHR Listing

Coal River and its sites demonstrate the characteristics of a convict settlement administered by military, 1801 to c.1821, phasing out between 1821 and 1855. From Lieutenant Menzies' to Captain Wallis' commands, the military played a central role in designing and constructing Coal River. This is the foundation of modern Newcastle and Newcastle Harbour. (Hunter, C., 2001/HO)

### CPH

CPH concurs with the 2008 HMP assessment and concludes that Fort Scratchley is a particularly fine and intact example of a fortification in NSW that demonstrates an evolution of military technologies and planning principles, as evidenced by its surviving casemate batteries, tunnel system, and barracks complex, and later structures including the Battery Observation Post, Searchlight Directing Station, and Searchlight Generator Room, and c. 1939-1945 additions to the Old Guardhouse building. The barracks complex buildings at Fort Scratchley are also a particularly fine and intact example of barracks buildings designed in the Victorian Regency style in NSW, demonstrating typical features of its typology including classically proportioned façades, corrugated metal roofs and verandahs, verandah colonnades, sash windows.

CPH requires further research to provide commentary on the assessment provided in the Coal River Precinct SHR listing.

## 4.3. Existing Statements of Significance

### The 2008 Fort Scratchley Heritage Management Plan Statement of Significance is as follows:<sup>118</sup>

*Fort Scratchley is unique in Australia as an intact cohesive coastal fortress complex located at the seaward flank of a major metropolis. The battery structures are physical evidence of the layering of the progression of several generations of armaments which provided the major defence installation for the city of Newcastle and the harbour entrance from 1882 to 1972. Fort Scratchley is one the most important strategic coastal defence sites in NSW. Its siting was recognised early for its advantages for navigation and defence of the port of Newcastle. From this elevated position, it was possible to view the NSW coast (north and south) but also to defend the entrance to the river from threats from within and without. The siting of Newcastle close to the mouth of the river meant that a fort at the site of Fort Scratchley functioned as both an inner and outer line of defence. [NHL Criteria A & B]*

*During World War II, Fort Scratchley's defensive role was exemplified as the scene of a hostile encounter with Japanese forces. Shots were fired from Fort Scratchley at a Japanese submarine in response to shell fire directed at the BHP Steelworks and the east end of Newcastle, making Fort Scratchley the only Australian fort to have fired in action at an enemy surface target.*

*The site of Fort Scratchley was strategically located on the geographically prominent Signal Hill. It afforded views to the town, mouth of river and the coast. As a strategic site for defence and navigation in Newcastle, it was early capitalised upon by early settlers. The fort contributes to the aesthetic and landmark quality of the site. It was an important component of the historical development of the Signal Hill/ Nobbys Beach precinct. [NHL Criteria A & E]*

*Signal Hill is historically significant in the early development of Newcastle prior to establishment of the fort. It was the site of the first coal mine and thus it marks the inception of a major industry in the Hunter*

<sup>118</sup> Note that the Statement of Significance from the 2008 Heritage Management Plan is assessed against Commonwealth Heritage List criteria.



Region up to the present day. It was the site of several military detachments from 1860 before the permanent establishment of the fort in 1882. [NHL Criteria A & C]

Signal Hill was the location of the signal station for the Port of Newcastle from 1815 until 1914, a continuous use for this purpose for 99 years. [NHL Criterion A]

The development of the site responded to the evolutionary upgrading of armaments. The original four 80 pounder guns in the casemates and barbette facing the harbour and three 9" guns facing seaward were replaced by 6" disappearing guns, later replaced by 6" breech loading guns. The casemates were upgraded with Nordenfeldt quick firing guns. The fort structures changed accordingly and upper level gun emplacements were covered over to form tunnels. [NHL Criteria A & D]

The barracks buildings constructed shortly after the fortifications are evidence of the occupation of the fort by military personnel, with clearly defined rank and roles within the functioning of the fort. A separate residence was provided for the commandant, while soldiers were accommodated in the barracks, guardhouse and later separate married quarters provided outside the fort compound.

The design and planning of the site clearly continues the Colonial Barracks concept which reflected British design precedent. The site has direct connections with the Bare Island Fort at the entrance to Botany Bay as these places are linked by their shared coastal defence histories, and contemporaneous design and development. [NHL Criterion D].

Fort Scratchley has important associations with the military planning and design of British Military Engineering specialist, Lieutenant Colonel Peter Scratchley and Colonel Jervois. [NHL Criteria A & H]

Fort Scratchley is a rare example of a functional barracks associated with an extant fortifications site [NHL Criteria B E & F]. The Commandant's Cottage, the barracks and guardhouse were designed by Gustave Morrell with involvement and oversighting by Colonial architect James Barnet. [NHL Criteria A & H]

Fort Scratchley is important to the many Defence personnel who were trained or stationed at the complex during the ninety years of operation for Defence purposes, and to military historians, in particular the Royal Australian Artillery Historical Society. [NHL Criteria G].

The foregoing Comparative Analysis has demonstrated that Fort Scratchley is a site of outstanding cultural heritage significance, unique in Australia as the largest and most diversified and intact coastal fortress and barracks complex.

**The Statement of Significance from the Coal River Precinct State Heritage Register listing is as follows:**

*The Aboriginal presence in the Coal River area predates European contact and has been continuous to the present day. The associations, over time, of particular places, sites and areas of the Precincts and of their distinctive landforms with Aboriginal culture can be revealed, as permissible, through further consultation and study.*

*Coal River is one of a number of sites in Australia first settled by convict transportation. Slavery, indentured labour, convict transportation and penal settlement have contributed to the spread of diverse cultural influences throughout the world and are global heritage themes. The national significance of Fort Scratchley and the national and state significance of the Convict Lumberyard/Stockade have been recognised.*

*The Coal River Historic Precincts have State significance because they concentrate the whole story of the development of New South Wales' first and most important industrial centre. They encompass the site of Newcastle's first coal mine, the site of the first navigational aids for coastal shipping and Hunter River traffic, and the site of a series of fortifications designed to protect the growing settlement and its precious coal reserves. These resources are largely due to the skills and labour of transported convicts, committed for secondary punishment.*

#### 4.4. Revised Statement of Significance

Fort Scratchley is of State heritage significance for its contribution to the development of Australia's early colonial history, serving as a particularly fine and intact example of a coastal fortification based on British military planning principles. The gun emplacements and tunnels complex designed by Sirs Peter Scratchley and William Jervis evidence military planning principles of British fortifications through its siting on a prominent position on top Signal Hill overlooking the mouth of the Hunter River, and the inclusion of a dry ditch, inner fort wall with embrasures, casemate batteries, and associated structures allowing the Fort to operate self-sufficiently. The site also shares many design principles with other coastal fortifications in Australia, such as Bare Island Fort, Georges Head Battery, and Fort Queenscliff, and New Zealand, at sites like Fort Ballance and Fort Jervis.

The barracks complex designed by Gustavus A. Morrell with oversight from James Barnet from the NSW Colonial Architect's office are also a particularly fine example of Victorian Regency design, with cohesive and harmonious designs consistent with other neoclassical barracks designs of the period. The buildings of the barracks complex are rare extant examples of their type, sharing many design principles such as their rectangular arrangements with restrained ornamentation, classically proportioned façades, corrugated metal roofs and verandahs, verandah colonnades, sash windows.

Fort Scratchley also serves as a rare example of Australian defence sites as the only coastal fortification that fired guns in anger at an enemy vessel during the Second World War, on 7-8 June 1942. Fort Scratchley makes a considerable contribution to the military history of NSW as an early defence site that has been modified and upgraded with new military technologies and armaments in response to the evolving needs of warfare. The subject site is also significant for its associations with the early convict settlement of the Newcastle region, as the rich coal deposits underneath and around Signal Hill provided a stimulus for settlement of the region in addition to the relocation of rebels associated with the Vinegar Hill convict uprising.

## 4.5. Other Heritage Listings

The Fort Scratchley site is currently listed on the following statutory and non-statutory registers:

Register	Listing Information/Nomination Status
<b>Statutory Registers</b>	
NSW State Heritage Register	Coal River Precinct SHR no. 01674 Coal River Precinct listing includes the Fort Scratchley item.
Newcastle Local Environmental Plan 2012	Fort Scratchley group (buildings and underground forts - Coal River Precinct) no. I480. The listing on the Newcastle LEP identifies the site as an item of state significance.
Commonwealth Heritage List	Not listed.
National Heritage List	Not listed.
Section 170 Register	Not listed.
<b>Non-Statutory Registers</b>	
Register of the National Estate	Fort Scratchley Group, no. 1283, and Fort Scratchley Above Ground Buildings, no. 1284.
National Trust (NSW) Register	Fort Scratchley Site no. 4355.
AIA Register of Significance Architecture	Not listed.
Engineers Australia	Fort Scratchley listed as Engineering Heritage Marker from 2009.
DOCOMOMO Australia	Not listed.

### 4.5.1. State Historical Themes

Heritage NSW has developed a thematic framework for use in heritage assessment and management and to increase an awareness and understanding of heritage items in a broader historical context rather than as individual items.

Heritage NSW has identified thirty-eight historical themes relevant to this state, correlating to nine national themes. The themes have been developed to facilitate an understanding of historical influences that have shaped and continue to shape the place. The following table identifies the relevant state historical themes and how these themes are represented by the subject site.

Australian Theme	NSW Theme	Notes	Comments
1. Tracing the natural evolution of Australia	Environment - naturally evolved	There are two aspects to this theme: (1) Features occurring naturally in the physical environment which	Fort Scratchley occupies a prominent position on Signal Hill and is encompassed by the Tasman Sea to the east and



Australian Theme	NSW Theme	Notes	Comments
		<p>have significance independent of human intervention (2) Features occurring naturally in the physical environment which have shaped or influenced human life and cultures.</p>	<p>overlooks the mouth of the Hunter River. The area forms the headland of the Newcastle Peninsula and was the easternmost point of the peninsula prior to the construction of Macquarie Pier which connected Nobbys Island to the mainland.</p>
<p>2. Peopling Australia</p>	<p>Aboriginal cultures and interactions with other cultures</p>	<p>Activities associated with maintaining, developing, experiencing and remembering Aboriginal cultural identities and practises, past and present; with demonstrating distinctive ways of life; and with interactions demonstrating race relations.</p>	<p>Signal Hill is also known as 'Tahlbinh' in the local Awabakal language. Its meaning is currently unknown.</p>
<p>2. Peopling Australia</p>	<p>Convict</p>	<p>Activities relating to incarceration, transport, reform, accommodation and working during the convict period in NSW (1788-1850) – does not include activities associated with the conviction of persons in NSW that are unrelated to the imperial 'convict system': use the theme of Law &amp; Order for such activities</p>	<p>During Newcastle's early settlement as a site of secondary punishment for the Vinegar Hill rebels, convicts mined the rich coal seams underneath Signal Hill.</p> <p>At this time, Signal Hill was also identified as a possible site to mount defences against convict-captured vessels that were attempting to flee the settlement. This is the first mention of the current Fort Scratchley site being used for defence purposes.</p>
<p>2. Peopling Australia</p>	<p>Communication</p>	<p>Activities relating to the creation and conveyance of information</p>	<p>Fort Scratchley was historically located within a chain of communication between Newcastle's various coastal defence sites. This is particularly the case with the Battery Observation Post and Signals Centre during the Second World War</p> <p>More recently, the site has been used to communicate the historical occupation of the site, through providing external access to visitors, guided public tours and on-site interpretation.</p>

Australian Theme	NSW Theme	Notes	Comments
3. Developing local, regional and national economies	Events	Activities and processes that mark the consequences of natural and cultural occurrences	Since 2008, the Fort Scratchley Historical Society has operated the site as a public museum with on-site interpretation of Fort Scratchley's history as a coastal defence site and various military artefact displays. There are also artefacts that commemorate foreign battles that Australian soldiers have fought in.
3. Developing local, regional and national economies	Exploration	Activities associated with making places previously unknown to a cultural group known to them.	The area around Signal Hill was first described by Lieutenant Shortland. He described to the First Fleet diarist David Collins "a considerable quantity of very good coal, and lying so near the water side as to be conveniently shipped". Samples of this coal were transported to India and other overseas locations.
3. Developing local, regional and national economies	Industry	Activities associated with the manufacture, production and distribution of goods	The Laboratory building at Fort Scratchley was previously used as a space to make up submarine charges and pack artillery shells.
3. Developing local, regional and national economies	Mining	Activities associated with the identification, extraction, processing and distribution of mineral ores, precious stones and other such inorganic substances.	The land underneath Signal Hill was mined during the early 1800s for its rich coal seams. For this reason it was also previously known as Collier's Point.
3. Developing local, regional and national economies	Technology	Activities and processes associated with the knowledge or use of mechanical arts and applied sciences	<p>Fort Scratchley's structures and moveable artefacts display an evolution of Australian military technology. Its structures such as the dry ditch, loopholed wall, parapeted walls with embrasures, casemate batteries, and laboratory are evidence of the military technology of the Victorian era.</p> <p>Later technologies would be introduced at the site such as the 6 inch Mk VII breech loading guns, mounted <i>en barbette</i>, which replaced earlier guns due to their increased firing rate.</p> <p>The Second World War also introduced new technologies to</p>

Australian Theme	NSW Theme	Notes	Comments
			<p>the site, with the conversion of the Old Guardhouse into a signals centre and the modifications to the Battery Observation Post which allowed for communications between Newcastle's various defence sites.</p>
<p>4. Building settlements, towns and cities</p>	<p>Towns, suburbs and villages</p>	<p>Activities associated with creating, planning and managing urban functions, landscapes and lifestyles in towns, suburbs and villages</p>	<p>Fort Scratchley is associated with the early settlement of Newcastle, with its rich coal deposits providing a stimulus for further settlement, as well as its use as the earliest defence site in the area providing defences to the coal port city amidst fears of foreign attack.</p>
<p>4. Building settlements, towns and cities</p>	<p>Accommodation</p>	<p>Activities associated with the provision of accommodation, and particular types of accommodation – does not include architectural styles – use the theme of Creative Endeavour for such activities.</p>	<p>The barracks complex at Fort Scratchley evidences the provision of accommodation and associated utility facilities to military officers from the 1890s onwards, including accommodation facilities for married officers in the case of the Master Gunner's Cottage.</p>
<p>5. Working</p>	<p>Labour</p>	<p>Activities associated with work practises and organised and unorganised labour</p>	<p>The Commandant's Cottage at Fort Scratchley is demonstrative of work practices during the Victorian era. The eastern Servant's Quarters wing contains the building's utility structures, a dedicated servant's bedroom and separate 'Servant's Closet'.</p>
<p>7. Governing</p>	<p>Defence</p>	<p>Activities associated with defending places from hostile takeover and occupation</p>	<p>Fort Scratchley was first constructed in response to the Crimean War and fears of foreign vessels attacking the important coal port of Newcastle, and was later developed during the First and Second World Wars to protect against invasion.</p> <p>Fort Scratchley is also significant as the only Australian coastal defence site which fired guns in anger during the Second World War.</p>



Australian Theme	NSW Theme	Notes	Comments
8. Developing Australia's cultural life	Domestic life	Activities associated with creating, maintaining, living in and working around houses and institutions.	<p>Fort Scratchley's self-sufficient design is demonstrative of military fortification principles, with a combination of accommodation, recreation and utility spaces. The barracks complex and Commandant's Cottage also demonstrate the stratified ways of living between troops and NCOs, and between officers and the Commandant, respectively.</p> <p>Later additions to the site, such as the Master Gunner's Cottage, demonstrate an evolution of domestic living conditions from the late 1800s to the mid-twentieth century.</p>
8. Developing Australia's cultural life	Social institutions	Activities and organisational arrangements for the provision of social activities	<p>Since 2008, the Fort Scratchley Historical Society has operated the site as a public museum dedicated to teaching the public about the site's history and its role as part of Australia's coastal defence system.</p> <p>The Historical Society leads guided tours of the tunnels complex and offers a self-directed tour of the site aided by on-site interpretation.</p>
9. Making the phases of life	Persons	Activities of, and associations with, identifiable individuals, families and communal groups	<p>The site is primarily associated with Sir Peter Scratchley and Sir William Jervis who were commissioned to advise on Australia's colonial defences in the mid to late 1800s.</p> <p>The barracks complex is also associated with Colonial Architect James Barnet as one of his later works prior to his sudden retirement as Colonial Architect in 1899.</p>

## 4.6. Significant Components

### 4.6.1. Gradings of Significance

The Heritage NSW publication *Assessing heritage significance*, acknowledges that the individual components of a heritage place may be of differing levels of significance, and that they may contribute differently to the place's significance. The document puts forth a standard, five grade system to assess the relative significance of individual elements, based on the contribution the element makes to the overall significance of the place and the degree to which the significance of the place would be diminished if the element were removed or altered. These five grades are Exceptional, High, Moderate, Little and Intrusive.

#### **Grading Significance**

<b>Grading</b>	<b>Justification / Definition</b>
<b>Exceptional</b>	Rare or outstanding element directly contributing to the item's significance.
<b>High</b>	High degree of original fabric. Demonstrates a key element of the item's significance. Alterations do not detract from its significance.
<b>Moderate</b>	Altered or modified elements. Elements with little heritage value, but which contribute to the overall significance of the item.
<b>Little</b>	Alterations detract from the item's significance. Difficult to interpret.
<b>Intrusive</b>	Damaging to the item's significance.

In addition, the following table details how the subject site's condition has been assessed.

#### **Condition Grading**

<b>Condition Rating</b>	<b>Description</b>
E - Excellent	Element has no defects. Condition and appearance are as new.
G - Good	Element exhibits superficial wear and tear, minor defects, minor signs of deterioration to surface finishes, but does not require major maintenance. No major defects exist.
F- Fair	Element is in average condition. Deteriorated surfaces require attention. Services are functional but require attention. Deferred maintenance work exists.
P - Poor	Element has deteriorated badly. Serious structural problems exist. General appearance is poor with eroded protective coatings. Elements are defective, services are frequently failing, significant number of major defects exist.
V – Very Poor	Element has failed. It is not operational and is unfit for occupancy

The following table provides the relative significance of elements and components on the subject site as well as subjective condition assessments for the major fabric elements. Floor plans and elevations illustrate these gradings of significance for Fort Scratchley through Figure 267 to Figure 271.

Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
<b>Battery Complex</b>			Exceptional	
Western Barbette	Form	No significant alterations to original form	Exceptional	Good
	80 lb RML gun mounted on gun carriage	Gun restored 2020 with new concrete pad and carriage. Only the gun form is of exceptional significance.	Exceptional	Excellent
No. 1 Gun	Form	No significant alterations to original form	Exceptional	Fair
	Mark VII BL gun and pedestals	Guns returned to Fort Scratchley in 1978, later mounted on pedestals from Georges Head Fortifications Complex. Further restoration by Fort Scratchley Historical Society.	Exceptional	Good
	New handrails	New handrails installed during 2005-2008 refurbishment works for public access and amenity	Little	Good
No. 2 Gun	Form	No significant alterations to original form	Exceptional	Fair
	Mark VII BL gun and pedestals	Guns returned to Fort Scratchley in 1978, later mounted on pedestals from Georges Head Fortifications Complex. Further restoration by Fort Scratchley Historical	Exceptional	Good

<sup>119</sup> Commentary on individual items does not contribute to its assessment of significance but provides an overview of documented changes made to the built fabric. Where the built fabric has been changed and has contributed to an item's assessment of significance, this is reflected in its assigned grading.



Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
		Society.		
	New handrails	New handrails installed during 2005-2008 refurbishment works for public access and amenity	Little	Good
Casemate Battery	Form	No significant alterations to original form	Exceptional	Good
	Casemate #1, fitout as magazine, racks & folding barrier	Internal concrete walls added during 1910-11 modifications to casemate battery	Exceptional	Fair
	80 lb RML gun and carriage	Returned to Fort Scratchley	Exceptional	Excellent
	Nordenfelt gun and mounting	Gun restored 2015 by Fort Scratchley Historical Society	Exceptional	Excellent
	Signwriting on walls	Original signage to enable interpretation of Fort Scratchley's use as a defence site.	Exceptional	Good
	Lamp recesses	Recesses reconstructed and fitted with restored bronze frames	Exceptional	Good

Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
	Ventilation shafts	Hoists refurbished and upgraded during 1978 reconstruction works	Exceptional	Good
Tunnels	Form	During 2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Tunnel roof waterproofing membrane installed and lighting systems upgraded.</li> <li>▪ Extensive repairs to areas of deteriorated concrete and previously painted floors repainted.</li> <li>▪ Reveals and openings rebuilt and new timber doors and windows installed.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Fair
	Reconstructed lamp recesses and lamps	Lamp recesses and bronze fittings treated and restored	Exceptional	Good
	Signwriting on wall	Original signage to enable interpretation of Fort Scratchley's use as a defence site	Exceptional	Good
	Bullhead rail slabs	Railway sections used to support later roof slabs needed back, cleaned, treated and repainted then limewashed	High	Good
Gunnery Mess	Form	The mess area is an 80% reconstruction of the fixed tables and bench seats in this area installed during the 1981 conservation works. Based on extant joinery elements in the space.	Exceptional	Good
	Benches and tables	Reconstructed 2005-2008	Moderate	Good

Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
	Lamp recesses	Lamp recesses and bronze fittings treated and restored.	Exceptional	Good
	Signwriting	Original signage to enable interpretation of Fort Scratchley's use as a defence site.	Exceptional	Good
Magazines	Form	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Extensive repairs to magazine spaces.</li> <li>▪ Reveals and openings rebuilt and new timber doors installed.</li> <li>▪ Treatment of metal elements.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Good
	Racks		High	Good
	Stable doors and all door joinery	New joinery installed during 2005-2008 works.	Moderate	Good
	Benches		Exceptional	Good
	Metal vent flue	Cleaned, treated and repainted during 2005-2008 works.	High	Good
Ammunition Hoists	Component parts of all hoists, restored and derelict, hand winches	Metalwork elements treated and repainted. Some ammunition hoists with hand winch mechanism are severely deteriorated.	Exceptional	Good
Artillery Store	Form	2005-2008 works:	Exceptional	Good



Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Stud wall stripped and cleaned back, leaks repaired, new power, lighting, communications and security installed.</li> <li>▪ Floor painted and walls limewashed.</li> <li>▪ Extensive repairs to concrete and steel lintel above sliding door.</li> <li>▪ Metalwork items cleaned, treated and repainted.</li> </ul>		
Battery Observation Post	Form	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Extensive concrete repairs to the structure, mainly to the interior spalling areas.</li> <li>▪ New stainless steel structural supports beneath concrete slab roof.</li> <li>▪ New galvanised steel stair installed to access observation level, and new steel door and frame installed at external stair entry.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Fair
	Depression Range Finder Pedestal		Exceptional	Good
	Bronze window frames	New brass window frames installed in 2005-2008	Moderate	Fair
The Parade Ground	Form	New asphalt concrete laid over the parade ground during 2005-2008 works	High	Good
Flagstaff	Form	Conjectural reconstruction of the original flagstaff initially installed during 1978-1985 works, recently dismantled during 2005-2008: metalwork repaired, repaired and reinstated with new guys and stays, new anchor points and new fittings.	Moderate	Good

Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
<b>Inner Fort Precinct</b>			Exceptional	
Canteen	Chimney	Chimney with simple crowns made up of rendered rows of corbelled bricks	High	Good
	Roof	Hip roof with corrugated metal sheeting	High	Good
	Verandah	Corrugated metal sheeting and cast iron columns	High	Good
	Façade	Cement rendered brick walls scored to simulate ashlar brickwork	Exceptional	Good
	Windows	Timber framed double hung sash windows with 3x2 panes per sash	High	Fair
	Clerestory windows	High level clerestory windows aligned with sash windows below. Certain units reglazed with lapped glass.	High	Good
	Doors	Timber framed four panel wooden doors. New and recycled door hardware installed.	Moderate	Good
	Gutters	Contemporary metal gutter fixtures	Little	Good

Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
	Recreation room	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Walls skim coated, sanded and repainted, new lighting and lino floor coverings installed.</li> <li>▪ Existing joinery shelves repaired.</li> <li>▪ Fireplace opened up and birdproofed.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Good
	Canteen room	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ walls skim coated, repainted and a new sheet vinyl floor covering installed.</li> <li>▪ New handwashing basin installed and a new stainless steel bench and sink.</li> <li>▪ New plumbing, lighting and power installed.</li> <li>▪ New insect mesh screen door and window screen installed.</li> <li>▪ Doors and windows extensively repaired.</li> <li>▪ Pass-through to Recreation Room was reopened.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Fair
	NCO Room 1 and Gunners' Room	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ walls skim coated and repainted, door and window repairs undertaken.</li> <li>▪ New lighting, power and phone point and the infill between the rooms and the canteen rebuilt.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Fair
Barracks	Chimney	Chimney with simple crowns made up of rendered rows of corbelled bricks	High	Good
	Roof	Hip roof with corrugated metal sheeting	High	Good



Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
	Verandah	Corrugated metal sheeting and cast iron columns	High	Good
	Façade	Cement rendered brick walls scored to simulate ashlar brickwork	Exceptional	Good
	Windows	Timber framed double hung sash windows with 3x2 panes per sash	High	Fair
	Clerestory windows	High level clerestory windows aligned with sash windows below.	High	Good
	Doors	Timber framed four panel wooden door. New and recycled door hardware installed.	Moderate	Good
	Gutters	Contemporary metal gutter fixtures	Little	Good
	Barracks North and South	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ barrack rooms were skim coated, sanded and repainted , new lighting and lino floor coverings installed.</li> <li>▪ On the south east side external timber louvres reinstated and on the north west side an external panel of clear polycarbonate sheeting installed.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Good

Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Walls were left untreated behind the door swing to demonstrate construction techniques utilised.</li> </ul>		
	Fireplace, joinery and fittings	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Doors and windows extensively repaired or replaced.</li> <li>Existing shelves were repaired and new hat pegs installed.</li> <li>The fire places were opened up and birdproofed at the top.</li> </ul>	High	Good
	Corrugated iron ceiling	Replaced during 1975-1977 reconstruction works.	High	Good
	Lino floor covering	Installed during 2005-2008 works, consistent with original finishes which were typically linoleum in barrack facilities of the period	Little	Good
NCOs' Quarters	Chimney	Chimney with simple crowns made up of rendered rows of corbelled bricks	High	Good
	Roof	Hip roof with corrugated metal sheeting	High	Good
	Verandah	Corrugated metal sheeting and cast iron columns	High	Good

Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
	Façade	Cement rendered brick walls scored to simulate ashlar brickwork	Exceptional	Good
	Windows	Timber framed double hung sash windows with 3x2 panes per sash	High	Fair
	Clerestory windows	High level clerestory windows aligned with sash windows below.	High	Good
	Doors	Timber framed four panel wooden doors.	Moderate	Good
	Gutters	Contemporary metal gutter fixtures	Little	Good
	NCO Rooms 3 and 4	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Stripped of all recent office joinery, the fireplace reopened, and the room was repainted.</li> <li>▪ Windows and doors replaced, new power and lighting installed.</li> <li>▪ The floor covering (vinyl tiles) and underlay removed and the floor boards sanded once.</li> <li>▪ Floorboards were repaired or replaced.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Good
	Barracks Office	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Stripped of all recent display joinery, the fireplace reopened and the room repainted.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Good



Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Windows and doors repaired , new power and lighting installed.</li> <li>▪ The vinyl floor covering and underlay removed and the floor boards sanded once.</li> <li>▪ Floorboards were repaired or replaced</li> </ul>		
	Store	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Walls were skim coated , the fireplace reopened and the room repainted.</li> <li>▪ Door and window repairs undertaken.</li> <li>▪ The vinyl tiles and underlay removed.</li> <li>▪ New power and lighting installed.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Fair
	Wash house	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Carpet removed and the floor repainted.</li> <li>▪ Walls skim coated and repainted.</li> <li>▪ Door and window repairs carried out.</li> <li>▪ New power and lighting installed.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Good
	Kitchen	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Walls patched and repainted.</li> <li>▪ Door and window repairs carried out.</li> <li>▪ Removed carpet and room repainted.</li> <li>▪ New power and lighting installed.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Good
	Pantry	During 2005-2008 works, the room was repainted, door and window repairs carried out , new power and lighting installed	Exceptional	Fair
	Store	During 2005-2008 works, the room was repainted, door and window repairs carried out , new power and lighting installed	Exceptional	Fair

Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
Commandant's Cottage	Chimneys	Chimneys with simple crowns made up of rendered rows of corbelled bricks	High	Good
	Roof	Hip roof with corrugated metal sheeting	High	Good
	Verandah	Corrugated metal sheeting and cast iron columns	High	Good
	Façade	Cement rendered brick walls scored to simulate ashlar brickwork	Exceptional	Good
	Windows	Timber framed double hung sash windows with 3x2 panes per sash	High	Fair
	Doors	Timber framed four panel wooden doors with external screen doors and French doors.	Moderate	Good
	Gutters	Contemporary metal gutter fixtures	Little	Good
	Bedroom 1	<p>Major reconstruction works undertaken during 1978-1985, including construction of replica doors and windows, replacement of floorboards and installation of new ceilings, cornices and fittings.</p> <p>2005-2008 works:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Room stripped of redundant cabling.</li> <li>▪ Door and window repairs carried out.</li> <li>▪ Room repainted including fireplace.</li> <li>▪ Floor left as found.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Good
	Officers' Sitting Room	<p>2005-2008 works:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Ceiling repaired above the chimney breast.</li> <li>▪ Door and window repairs carried out.</li> <li>▪ Room repainted including fireplace.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Good

Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
Servant's Quarters	Bedrooms 2 and 3	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Room stripped of redundant cabling.</li> <li>▪ Door and window repairs carried out.</li> <li>▪ Room repainted including fireplace.</li> <li>▪ French doors rebuilt.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Good
	Chimney	Chimneys with simple crowns made up of rendered rows of corbelled bricks	High	Good
	Roof	Hip roof with corrugated metal sheeting	High	Good
	Verandah	Corrugated metal sheeting and cast iron columns	High	Good
	Façade	Cement rendered brick walls scored to simulate ashlar brickwork	High	Good
	Windows	Timber framed double hung sash windows with 3x2 panes per sash	High	Fair
	Doors	Timber framed four panel wooden doors with external screen doors.	Moderate	Good
	Gutters	Contemporary metal gutter fixtures	Little	Good
Servant's Bedroom	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Room stripped of redundant cabling.</li> <li>▪ Door and window repairs carried out.</li> <li>▪ Room repainted.</li> <li>▪ New electrical sub board installed.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Good	



Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
	Kitchen	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Room stripped of recent kitchen joinery and floor finishes.</li> <li>▪ Existing sink removed and all services capped.</li> <li>▪ Fireplace reopened and the room was repainted.</li> <li>▪ Door and window repaired carried out.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Good
	Wash House	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Ceiling repainted.</li> <li>▪ New plumbing installed over the tubs.</li> <li>▪ Benches retained.</li> <li>▪ Door and window repairs carried out.</li> <li>▪ New power and lighting installed.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Fair
	Servant's Closet	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ New shower recess, hot water unit and exhaust fan installed.</li> <li>▪ The room and WC have been repainted.</li> <li>▪ New power and lighting has been installed.</li> </ul>	High	Fair
New Guardhouse	Form	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Extensive repairs to brickwork parapet, corroding embedded metal cleaned back and treated, cracked walls repaired.</li> <li>▪ Wall vents repaired, windows rebuilt and reinstalled with flashings. Interior repainted, roof membrane renewed.</li> </ul>	High	Fair

Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Surrounding concrete retaining wall removed and north wall has been unearthed exposing brick spoon drain.</li> </ul>		
Old Guardhouse	Form	2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Main electrical distribution equipment moved from the Old Guardhouse into the WWII addition.</li> <li>External cable risers removed.</li> <li>Lighting replaced.</li> <li>New external Fire Hose Reel cupboard installed.</li> <li>Timber floor exposed.</li> <li>New elevated modular floor installed in switchboard room over major cable entry through the concrete floor.</li> <li>New ceilings replacing asbestos fibre cement linings in WWII extension.</li> <li>Toilet fixtures removed and replaced, new drainage system and floor slab installed, and a new public amenities layout provided with new internal walls, partitions, painting, tiling, lighting and signs.</li> <li>Southern parapet of the public toilets have been vertically reinforced.</li> </ul>	Exceptional	Good
	Steel shutters	Steel shutters cleaned, treated and repainted during 2005-2008 works	High	Poor
	Fireplace hearth		High	Good

Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
	Flagstone paving	Flagstone paving underneath verandah awning constructed with sandstone compared to concrete paved verandahs with granite edge coping stone in other barracks complex buildings.	Exceptional	Fair
	Verandah awning	1981 reconstruction based on the original detail	Exceptional	Good
	Large main switchboard and meters	Originally installed in 1977 and relocated to the adjacent store in 2008	Little	Good
NCOs' Ablutions	Form	Floor covering were removed, framing and fascia above the north masonry wall renewed and door heads repaired during 2005-2008	Exceptional	Fair
Gunners' Ablutions	Form	Cleaned out, repaired, repainted and bird netting installed 2005-2008	Exceptional	Fair
	Slate partitions, WC pans & cisterns	Elements dating to the building's original construction in the 1880s	Exceptional	Fair
The Laboratory	Form	2005-2008: Cleared out, wall mounted air conditioning unit removed, timber doors rebuilt, new soffit mounted lighting installed, glass installed and asbestos cement sheet clad lean-to addition to the north removed. Roof membrane renewed.	Exceptional	Good
	Steel shutters	Metalwork conservation to steel shutters during 2005-2008.	High	Poor
	Signwriting	Extant signwriting retained to enable interpretation of Fort Scratchley' s use as a defence site.	Exceptional	Good
	Internal door joinery	Doors repaired and repainted during 2005-2008	Exceptional	Good



Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
Searchlight Generator Room	Form including plinth and wall fittings	Building unearthed on the north end to reduce moisture penetration and damage during 2005-2008. Generator plinth is generally intact from its original construction during 1939-1945.	High	Fair
	Steel doors	Doors repaired and repainted during 2005-2008	High	Poor
Searchlight Directing Station		Partially demolished from window head up and rebuilt. The interior is left with an off-the-form finish and the exterior cement rendered to falls and pencil rounds.	High	Poor
Inner Fortress Wall	Approximately 150 feet along the southern edges of the fortress		Exceptional	Good
Entry Gates		Entry gates originally reconstructed in 1981, and recently restored during 2005-2008 to their original configuration, including reinstatement of replica copper lanterns	High	Good
Bridge		Bridge strengthened with steel beams in 1984. Some original bollards present, however, bollards on the southern side of the dry ditch are 1983 replicas.	High	Good
Dry Ditch and Wall			Exceptional	Good
<b>Outer Fort Precinct</b>			High	

Item	Description	Commentary <sup>119</sup>	Significance	Condition
Mine Firing Station	Two rooms partially buried	Soil build up removed, new lighting and power, upgrade to entrance door lintel and modifications to security gate. Structure is currently inaccessible due to vandalism concerns.	High	
Master Gunner's Cottage		2005-2008 works: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Re-roofed and repainted</li> <li>▪ Replacement weatherboard and new verandah boards installed.</li> <li>▪ New ceilings, linings and timber mouldings installed throughout</li> <li>▪ New floor coverings, lighting, plumbing and locking installed.</li> </ul>	High	Good
Workshop		Constructed 2005-2008 on the original slab of the demolished Transport Garage	Little	
Hall		Constructed 2005-2008 on the former practice parade ground, south of the remnant foundation wall of the former Mess Building	Little	

Table 4. Significant Elements at Fort Scratchley

#### 4.6.2. Integrity and Condition

CPH inspected the Fort Scratchley Historic Site on 8 November 2023 and 12 February 2024 to confirm the extent and condition of its building and its components. Despite modifications, it continues to exhibit general forms, materials, finishes, and details, installed during its multiple phases of development, as discussed in (Section 2.9).

#### 4.6.3. Significance Grading Diagrams

- Grading refers to the general spaces and external elevations;
- Refer to Section 4.6.1 for a more detailed assessment of individual elements of fabric.

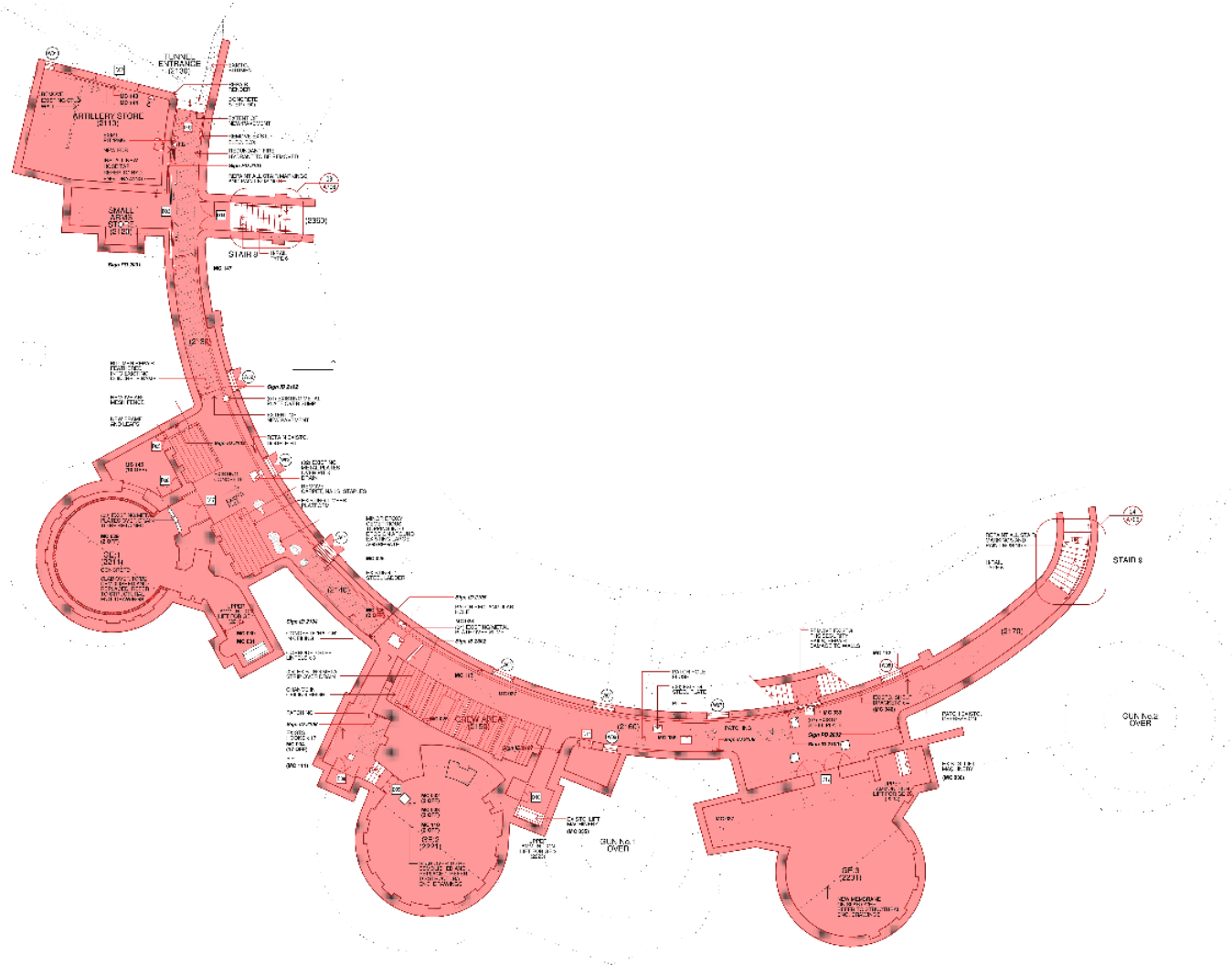


Fort Scratchley Historic Site  
 SHR no. 01674  
 Site Plan 

Figure 267. Overall site plan showing the relative significance ranking of identified buildings on the site. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)



Figure 268.  
 Gradings of  
 Significance  
 Floor Plan -  
 Tunnel Level.  
 (Source:  
 Suters  
 Architects,  
 adapted by  
 CPH)



**LEGEND**

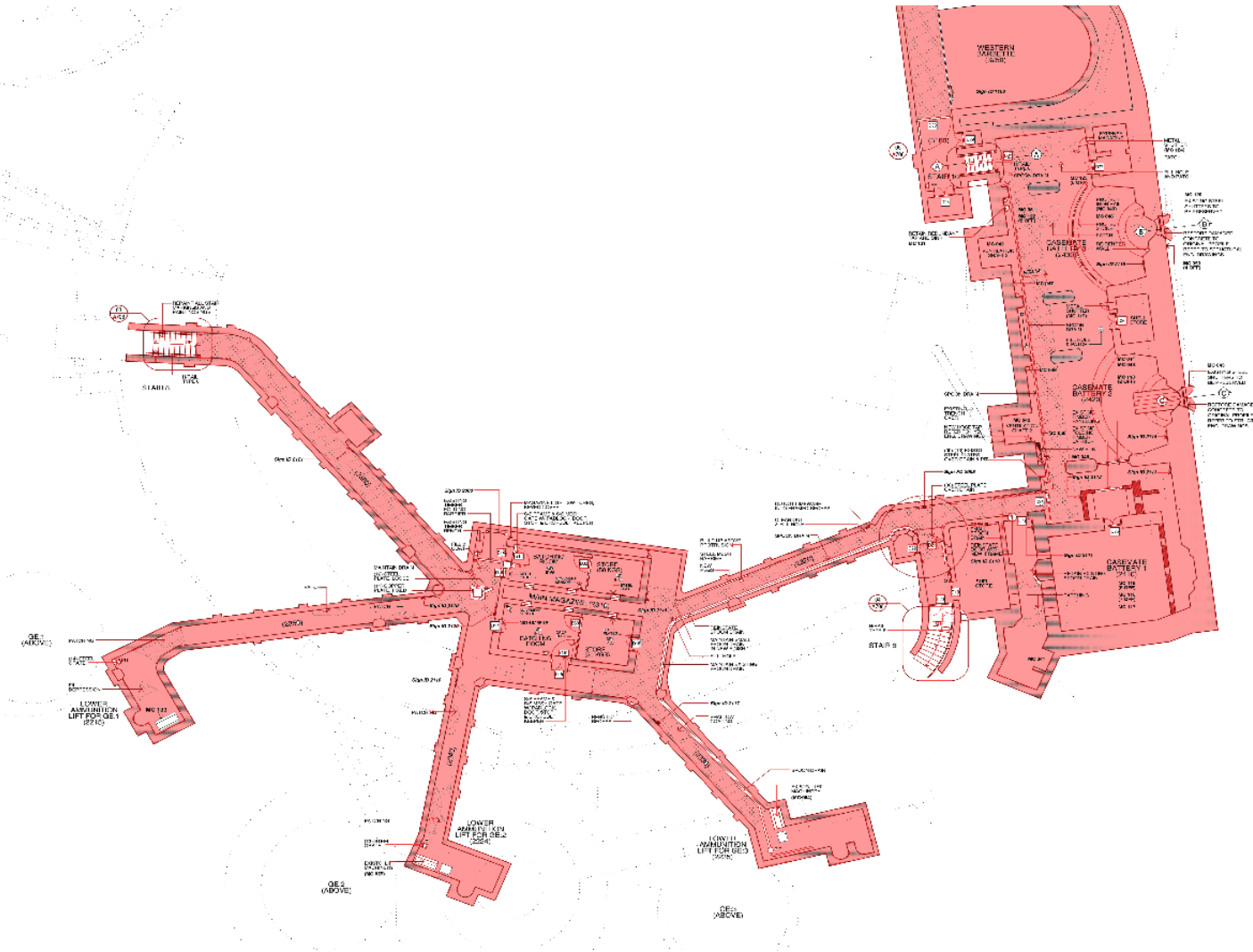
<span style="display:inline-block; width:15px; height:15px; background-color:red; border:1px solid black;"></span> Exceptional Significance	<span style="display:inline-block; width:15px; height:15px; background-color:orange; border:1px solid black;"></span> High Significance	<span style="display:inline-block; width:15px; height:15px; background-color:yellow; border:1px solid black;"></span> Moderate Significance
<span style="display:inline-block; width:15px; height:15px; background-color:lightyellow; border:1px solid black;"></span> Little Significance	<span style="display:inline-block; width:15px; height:15px; background-color:grey; border:1px solid black;"></span> Intrusive	

NOTE The diagram shows indicative grades of significance for the subject site, building and internal spaces only. Individual elements in these spaces may be higher (or lower) significance as indicated Section 4 of the CMP. The base plans for the grading of significance have been prepared by Suters Architects Pty Ltd.

Fort Scratchley Historic Site  
 SHR no. 01674  
 Floor Plan - Tunnel Level



Figure 269.  
 Gratings of  
 Significance  
 Floor Plan -  
 Magazine  
 Level. (Source:  
 Suters  
 Architects,  
 adapted by  
 CPH)



**LEGEND**

	Exceptional Significance		High Significance		Moderate Significance
	Little Significance		Intrusive		

NOTE The diagram shows indicative grades of significance for the subject site, building and internal spaces only. Individual elements in these spaces may be higher (or lower) significance as indicated Section 4 of the CMP. The base plans for the grading of significance have been prepared by Suters Architects Pty Ltd.

**Fort Scratchley Historic Site**  
 SHR no. 01674  
 Floor Plan - Magazine Level



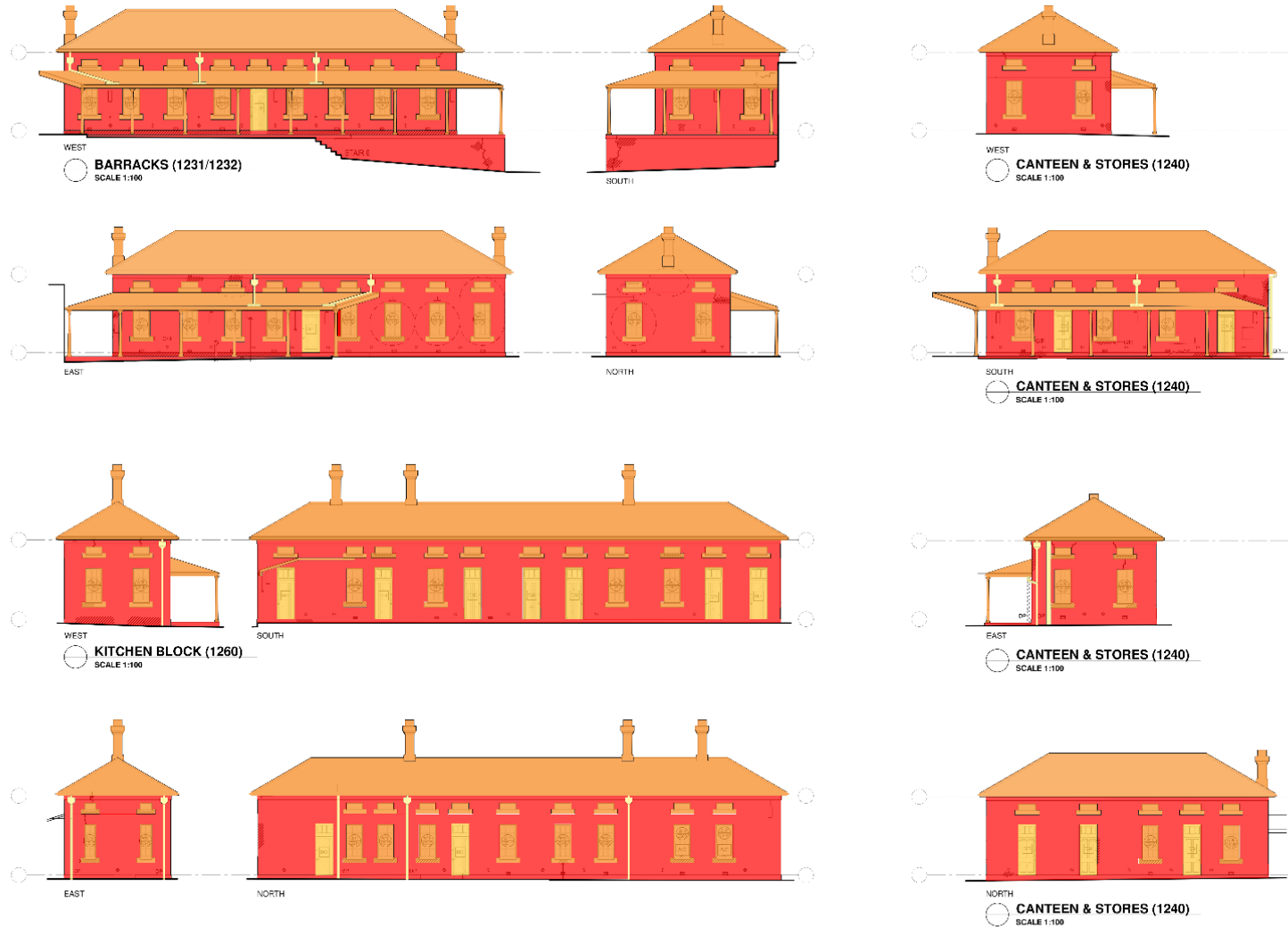


Figure 270. Graded elevations - Barracks, Kitchen Block & Canteen. Note that the NCOs' Quarters building has been named as Kitchen Block in line with the drawings prepared by Suters Architects. (Source: Suters Architects, adapted by CPH)

LEGEND	
<span style="color: red;">■</span>	Exceptional Significance
<span style="color: orange;">■</span>	High Significance
<span style="color: yellow;">■</span>	Moderate Significance
<span style="color: lightyellow;">■</span>	Little Significance
<span style="color: grey;">■</span>	Intrusive

NOTE The diagram shows indicative grades of significance for the subject site, building and internal spaces only. Individual elements in these spaces may be higher (or lower) significance as indicated Section 4 of the CMP. The base plans for the grading of significance have been prepared by Suters Architects Pty Ltd.

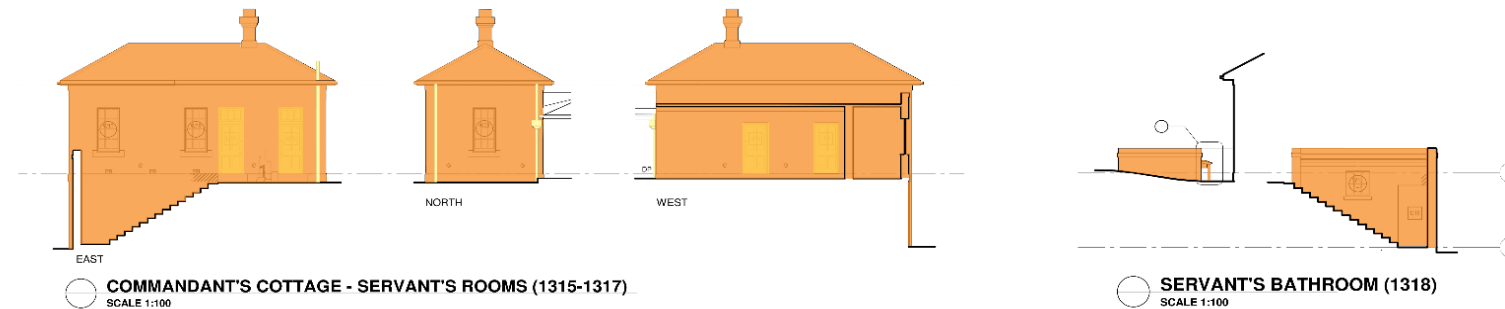
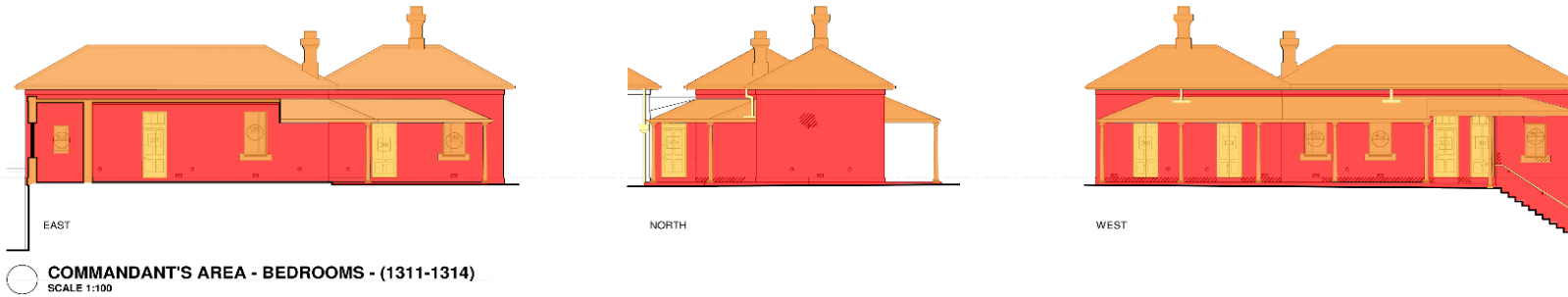
**Fort Scratchley Historic Site**  
 SHR no. 01674

Elevations - Barracks, Kitchen Block & Canteen





Figure 271.  
 Graded elevations -  
 Commandant's  
 Cottage and  
 Servant's  
 Quarters.  
 (Source:  
 Suters  
 Architects,  
 adapted by  
 CPH)



**LEGEND** ■ Exceptional Significance ■ High Significance ■ Moderate Significance  
■ Little Significance ■ Intrusive

**NOTE** The diagram shows indicative grades of significance for the subject site, building and internal spaces only. Individual elements in these spaces may be higher (or lower) significance as indicated Section 4 of the CMP. The base plans for the grading of significance have been prepared by Suters Architects Pty Ltd.

**Fort Scratchley Historic Site**  
 SHR no. 01674  
 Elevations - Commandant's Area & Cottage

## 5. OPPORTUNITIES AND CONSTRAINTS

### 5.1. Generally

The conservation planning process set out in the NSW Heritage Council document *Guidance on developing a conservation management plan* and The Burra Charter requires relevant opportunities and constraints to be identified to inform the development of conservation policies for places of significance.

The following sections are not conclusions, or recommendations, but rather observations relevant to the Fort Scratchley Historic Site and matters that require consideration and resolution. None of the stated opportunities and/or constraints in themselves form conservation policy. The conservation policies contained in Section 6 of this report respond to an understanding of the assessed significance of the place and its associated elements and the opportunities and constraints arising from their significance values.

### 5.2. Constraints Arising from Heritage Significance

The Fort Scratchley Historic Site is currently listed on the NSW State Heritage Register. Therefore, it is important that the site be managed and conserved in a way that retains and responds to the site's significance, while still allowing its continuing use as a public military museum to be respected. This process must be informed by the site's tangible and intangible values considered holistically as well as in relationship to its surrounding context, which not only includes the nearby military installations at Shepherds Hill and Fort Wallace, but also to the urban locality of Newcastle and the surrounding landscape context of Nobbys Head and the Hunter River. The most important aspects of its cultural significance are its association with the early settlement of the Newcastle area in response to the Vinegar Hill convict rebellion and the discovery of coal deposits beneath Signal Hill, the establishment of a colonial military presence in early Newcastle and is also significant as a colonial coastal fortification constructed in response to the fear of foreign attack. It is also significant as an extant example of an Australian coastal fortification.

The grading of significance identifies items of Exceptional, High and Moderate Significance. Elements graded as Exceptional and High must be conserved and retained in their original detailing when known and should not be impacted by new works unless necessary or as required by statutory regulations. Items of Moderate significance provide heritage value and contribute to the overall significance of the site and should be conserved and retained, where possible, but may be adapted for re-use in a manner sympathetic to the values contributing to the site's significance. Elements of Low significance may be removed to reveal underlying elements of greater relative significance to the place and intrusive elements should be removed when circumstances permit.

Another constraint flowing from the Statement of Significance applies to the usage of the site. Current and future uses of the site must not impact on its significant values, fabric, individual elements or components, including any uses that obstruct interpretation of significant fabric or introduce intrusive fabric into significant spaces. The site is currently used as a public museum with function space capacities and this CMP recommends that uses of this typology should continue to effectively conserve and retain the site's significant values.

This CMP also identifies that further consultation should be undertaken with stakeholders to further determine its social significance. These stakeholders may include the Fort Scratchley Historic Society, the University of Newcastle Library, and local Aboriginal people or community groups, including the Awabakal Local Aboriginal Land Council, who may have particular associations with places around the site.

### 5.3. Legislative Heritage Framework

The development of conservation, management and other general construction guidelines must consider the heritage planning context and other statutory frameworks that govern the use of the site.

### 5.3.1. Commonwealth Government Requirements

#### ***Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Act 1999***

The Commonwealth *Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Act 1999* (EPBC Act) establishes the Commonwealth's role in environmental assessment, biodiversity conservation and the management of protected areas. Under the EPBC Act, a referral to the Commonwealth Department of Climate Change, Energy, the Environment and Water is required for proposed 'actions' that have the potential to significantly impact on any matter of national environmental significance or the environment of Commonwealth land (including leased land).

A search on the Protected Matters Search Tool (PMST) applied with a 500 metre buffer reveals a total of 74 migratory species, 4 threatened ecological communities, 93 threatened species, 100 listed marine species as having potential to occur in the site's vicinity. The site is also located in proximity of the Hunter Estuary Wetlands and four places listed as Commonwealth Land. The primary constraint arising from the EPBC Act is the minimisation of impacts on these protected matters flowing from works undertaken at the site. Heritage NSW may need to refer to the Commonwealth Department of Climate Change, Energy, the Environment and Water any proposal for works that could have significant impact on these items.

#### ***Disability Discrimination Act 1992***

The *Disability Discrimination Act 1992* (DDA) aims to eliminate as far as possible discrimination against persons on the ground of disability in areas including access to premises and the provision of facilities, services and land. The DDA in conjunction with the *Disability (Access to Premises - building) Standards 2010* (the Premises Standards) place obligations on site managers to provide more equitable access to places and sites. An accessibility strategy should be developed with appropriate guidance and should be used for the design and implementation of future accessibility upgrades. Changes to the built fabric that will have significant heritage implications should be worked through to ensure that the proposed solution has minimal impacts on the heritage values of the place.

#### ***National Construction Code 2022***

The *National Construction Code 2022* (NCC) is a set of performance standards to which construction must adhere and is given legal effect by the *Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation 2000* under the NSW *Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979*. When new building works are proposed, site managers should perform due diligence checks to ascertain if this work must be undertaken within the NCC and consider appropriate solutions to ensure compliance with its regulations. Where works would have significant heritage implications on significant fabric, an alternative performance based solution may be considered to minimise such impacts. In general, proposed building work, such as alterations and additions to heritage buildings, must comply with the fire safety requirements of the Building Code of Australia contained within the NCC. In addition, where it is proposed to develop over half the total volume of the building or where existing fire safety measures contained within the building are inadequate, the relevant planning authority has powers to require that the building is partially or wholly upgraded to comply with the NCC.

### 5.3.2. New South Wales Government Requirements

#### ***NSW Heritage Act 1977***

In NSW, the legal protection for items of state heritage significance is afforded by the NSW *Heritage Act 1977*. Items of state significance are listed on the State Heritage Register (SHR) and their inclusion on the register identifies them as possessing values that are important to the people of NSW, as detailed in the NSW Department of Planning and Environment's *Assessing heritage significance: Guidelines for assessing places and objects against the Heritage Council of NSW criteria* document.

The Fort Scratchley Historic Site is currently included within the Coal River Precinct listing on the NSW State Heritage Register (SHR No. 01674) and must be maintained in accordance with the *Minimum Standards for Maintenance and Repair* as detailed in the *Heritage Regulation 2012*.



In addition, works proposed to items listed on the SHR require approval via a Section 60 application from the Heritage Council of NSW unless they fall within the standard exemptions granted under Section 57(2) of the Heritage Act. There are currently no site-specific exemptions that apply to the Fort Scratchley Historic Site. Under Section 170A of the *Heritage Act 1977*, the City of Newcastle Council is required to maintain the place with due diligence in accordance with State Owned Heritage Management Principles and comply with guidelines issued by the Heritage Council.

#### **National Parks and Wildlife Act 1974**

The National Parks and Wildlife Act 1974 (NPW Act) provides for the protection of natural and cultural heritage in NSW. Relevant to the built and Aboriginal heritage context, the NPW Act includes provisions for the protection of Aboriginal places and objects. Aboriginal places are defined under Section 84 of the NPW Act and Section 5 of the NPW Act defines Aboriginal objects as "*any deposit, object or material evidence (not being a handicraft made for sale) relating to the Aboriginal habitation of that area that comprises New South Wales...and includes Aboriginal remains*". Section 86 of the Act creates an offence to harm or desecrate Aboriginal objects and places. Any future development of the site must consider the impact of works on potential Aboriginal objects and places and if they are likely to be harmed by the proposed works, it is recommended that owners obtain an Aboriginal Heritage Impact Permit (AHIP) following consultation with relevant local Aboriginal people or groups. Development works that harm or illicitly move Aboriginal objects in contravention of this Act are liable for penalties created under the Act, including failure to exercise due diligence requirements prescribed within the *Due Diligence Code of Practice for the Protection of Aboriginal Objects in New South Wales*.

A search on the Aboriginal Heritage Information Management System (AHIMS) returned one known Aboriginal site located within the allotment of the site. A search applied with a 1 km buffer radius revealed an additional six Aboriginal sites around the subject site. It is recommended that an Aboriginal Due Diligence Assessment is undertaken to determine the potential significance of these sites.

#### **5.3.3. Local Government Requirements**

##### **Newcastle Local Environmental Plan 2012 and Development Control Plan 2023**

The Fort Scratchley Historic Site is included within the Coal River Precinct listing (LEP no. I480) under schedule 5 of the *Newcastle Local Environmental Plan 2012* (Newcastle LEP) and is included within the Newcastle East Heritage Conservation Area.

The LEP and Development Control Plan (DCP), which enters into force on 1 March 2023, sets out the local environmental planning provisions for the LGA in accordance with the *Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979* (NSW).

Section 5.10(1) of the LEP sets out Council's Heritage Conservation objectives, namely:

- (a) *to conserve the environmental heritage of the City of Newcastle,*
- (b) *to conserve the heritage significance of heritage items and heritage conservation area, including associated fabric, settings and views,*
- (c) *to conserve archaeological sites,*
- (d) *to conserve Aboriginal objects and Aboriginal places of heritage significance.*

The study area is zoned RE1: Public Recreation Commercial Core under the Newcastle LEP. The land use table details regarding RE1 Public Recreation includes the following:

##### *Zone RE1 Public Recreation*

###### *1 Objectives of zone*

*To enable land to be used for public open space or recreational purposes.*

*To provide a range of recreational settings and activities and compatible land uses.*

*To protect and enhance the natural environment for recreational purposes.*

*2 Permitted without consent*

*Environmental facilities; Environmental protection works*

*3 Permitted with consent*

*Aquaculture; Boat launching ramps; Boat sheds; Camping grounds; Car parks; Caravan parks; Centre-based child care facilities; Charter and tourism boating facilities; Community facilities; Emergency services facilities; Information and education facilities; Jetties; Kiosks; Marinas; Markets; Moorings; Passenger transport facilities; Recreation areas; Recreation facilities (indoor); Recreation facilities (major); Recreation facilities (outdoor); Registered clubs; Respite day care centres; Restaurants or cafes; Roads; Water recreation structures*

*4 Prohibited*

*Any development not specified in item 2 or 3*

## **5.4. Non-statutory Considerations**

Fort Scratchley is listed on the National Trust Register, Register of the National Estate and the Engineering Heritage Register. Non-statutory registers like these do not provide statutory protections nor impose obligations on site owners, but they do indicate to the wider public the importance of the site's significance as determined by advocacy and peak industry bodies. The listing of sites on these registers often allows for protection and advocacy in the absence of statutory protections.

### **5.4.1. National Trust (NSW) Register**

The National Trust (NSW) has assembled a register of heritage items and conservation areas. The National Trust Register is a respected guide to items of cultural significance. The National Trust is also an important advocacy body for important heritage issues, including negotiation, education and forming partnerships to achieve good heritage outcomes. The Trust is also able to provide advice to site owners, local government authorities and community organisations.

The subject site was listed on the register in 1998 (ID no. 4355).

### **5.4.2. Register of the National Estate**

The Register of the National Estate is an archived list of natural, Indigenous and historic heritage places throughout Australia. It was originally established under the *Australian Heritage Commission Act 1975* (since repealed). It was closed in 2007 following the establishment of a new system of national heritage protection under the EPBC Act and the *Australian Heritage Council Act 2003*. The register is maintained on a non-statutory basis and functions as a publicly available archive and educational resource.

The Fort Scratchley Historic Site is listed on the Register of the National Estate (Place ID. 1283 and 1284).

### 5.4.3. Engineers Australia

The Engineers Australia Engineering Heritage Register is a heritage register maintained by Engineers Australia to recognise historical engineering achievements across Australia to raise the profile and understanding of the work of past engineers across the country.

The Fort Scratchley Historic Site was awarded the Engineering Heritage Marker in 2008 and is listed on the Engineering Heritage Register.

There is no obligation for City of Newcastle Council to consult with Engineers Australia, however, they may wish to consult with them during the design of works as they publish their own practice notes to do with items of engineering significance.

### 5.4.4. Fort Scratchley Plan of Management

The current Fort Scratchley Plan of Management (at the time of writing) was adopted by the City of Newcastle Council in 2013 and outlined a strategic vision for the site's management based on recommendations and actions listed in the 2008 Heritage Management Plan prepared by Sutera Architects in association with Dawbin Architects. The aims of the Plan are to:

- *identify and conserve Fort Scratchley's intrinsic historic, aesthetic and social values*
- *determine the appropriate use and development of the Fort, ensuring these are compatible with the inherent values of the site, especially the heritage values*
- *develop appropriate management responses to the issues affecting the Fort and actions that reflect Council and community expectations within reasonable resource constraints*
- *meet legislative requirements for the Local Government Act 1993 and the Heritage Act 1977.*

This CMP should be read in conjunction with the Plan of Management, as it provides context and policy direction for the strategic vision and basis for management contained within the Plan of Management.

The Plan of Management also identifies permitted future uses and development of the site, which should be informed by:

- activities and developments permitted under the Newcastle LEP
- purposes consistent with the core objectives for the relevant category of land under the *Local Government Act 1993* (refer to section 6.6.1 of the Plan of Management)
- purposes consistent with the policies of this CMP
- purposes consistent with the key objectives and values in the Plan of Management.

A revised Plan of Management is currently being prepared by the City of Newcastle Council and will supersede the guiding principles contained in the 2013 Plan of Management. Forward reference to Fort Scratchley Plan of Management should refer to the revised Plan of Management upon its adoption and publication.

## 5.5. Best-practice heritage guidance

### 5.5.1. The Burra Charter

The Burra Charter (the *Australia ICOMOS Charter for Places of Cultural Significance, 2013*) provides guidance for the conservation and management of places of cultural significance (cultural heritage places). The Charter sets a standard of practice for those who provide advice, make decisions about, or undertake works to places of cultural significance, including owners, managers, and custodians.



The Burra Charter defines various terms and identifies principles and procedures observed in conservation work and underpins heritage management in Australia. A copy of the Charter is available at:

- <https://australia.icomos.org/wp-content/uploads/The-Burra-Charter-2013-Adopted-31.10.2013.pdf>

The Charter can be applied to all types of places of cultural significance including natural, Aboriginal and historic places with cultural values. The development of conservation policies within this CMP has been consistent with the principles, terminology and methodology of the Burra Charter. All works to the subject site should also be undertaken in accordance with the Charter's principle and practice notes.

### 5.5.2. Other Relevant Resources

Other practice notes and guidelines that may be relevant to this site include:

- Heritage NSW, Heritage maintenance guides: technical guides for conserving, repairing and using heritage items. <https://www.environment.nsw.gov.au/topics/heritage/manage-heritage-items/heritage-maintenance-guides>.
- Engineers Australia | Engineering Heritage Australia, An Engineer's Guide to the Conservation of Australia's Engineering Heritage. <https://www.engineersaustralia.org.au/sites/default/files/2023-09/engineers-guide-conservation-australias-engineering-heritage.pdf>.
- Australia ICOMOS, Practice Notes. <https://australia.icomos.org/publications/burra-charter-practice-notes/>.
- ICOMOS International Scientific Committee on Fortifications and Military Heritage, ICOMOS Guidelines on Fortifications and Military Heritage. [https://www.icofort.org/\\_files/ugd/57e5c5\\_ac4934abb83c47229061509712f8cc1c.pdf](https://www.icofort.org/_files/ugd/57e5c5_ac4934abb83c47229061509712f8cc1c.pdf).

## 5.6. Approval Process

### 5.6.1. Development with Consent

Any development such as demolition works, alterations and additions, or physical disturbance and excavation to the areas of archaeological potential within the subject site requires development consent under the Newcastle LEP 2012: Development with consent requires:

- Development Application
- Construction Certificate
- Occupation certificate post DA. In the case of staged works, an Interim Occupation Certificate may be issued to allow the completed section of a building to be occupied.

Under the *Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979* (EP&A Act), all DAs must be formally assessed by the consent authority, which it assesses against the matters set out in Section 4.15 of the EP&A Act.

### 5.6.2. Development without consent

Development without consent generally applies to some low impact or routine activities. In the context of Fort Scratchley, the Newcastle LEP provides a list of development permitted without consent that is applicable to its land use zone (RE1) which can be found in Section 5.3.3. Development without consent can also apply to activities undertaken by government departments or agencies as part of their everyday responsibilities. The most common instruments that provide for development without consent are the *State Environmental Planning Policy (Transport and Infrastructure) 2021* and the *State Environmental Planning Policy (Exempt and Complying Development Codes) 2008*.

However, determining authorities have a statutory duty under Section 5.5 of the EP&A Act to consider the impact of activities, even minor activities on the environment, before they undertake or approve activities that do not require development consent from the relevant consent authority.

If an activity is judged by the relevant public authority to "significantly affect the environment", an Environmental Impact Statement, consistent with Part 5 of the EP&A Act, would be submitted for consideration by the public authority.<sup>120</sup>

### 5.6.3. Exempt development

Exempt development cannot be carried out on land that is, or on which there is an item listed on the State Heritage Register under the *Heritage Act 1977*. Planning or construction approval may not be required for low-impact or minor works (exempt development) that comply with the standards for exempt development works set out in the *State Environmental Planning Policy (Exempt and Complying Development Codes) 2008*.

### 5.6.4. Complying Development

Complying development cannot be carried out on land that is, or on which there is an item listed on the State Heritage Register under the *Heritage Act 1977*.

## 5.7. Heritage Act Approvals

### 5.7.1. Section 60 Approvals

There are currently two pathways for applications under Section 60 of the *Heritage Act 1977*:

- Section 60 Works Approval
  - For major works or activities that have, or would have, the potential to have a moderate or greater impact on the heritage significance of a State heritage item.
- Section 60 Fast Track Works
  - Eligible works must have little or no adverse impacts on the heritage significance of an item, is not listed as an exemption under the *Heritage Act 1977* and has a cost of works up to \$150,000.

The statutory timeframe for Section 60 applications is 40 days from when a complete application is accepted by Heritage NSW. The approval for applications lodged as s60 fast track works is generally within 21 days.

Heritage NSW may request additional information from the applicant to complete an assessment. In such instances the applicant has 21 calendar days to provide the information, during which time the assessment period is paused. The assessment period will restart when the information is provided or after the 21 days have passed.

### 5.7.2. Exemptions from Approval

Following a review of the *Heritage Act 1977*, the Heritage Council ceased the review and endorsement of CMPs, however, they continue to support owners/managers of State Heritage Register listed items and consultants to develop CMPs that adopt best practice heritage conservation principles. This includes the consideration of suitable site-specific exemptions from approval through the State Heritage Register listing process, or in response to the property owner's needs. Site-specific exemptions apply to nominated or listed State Heritage Register listed items and may include activities and work that:

- are necessary for day-to-day management of the property;
- have been previously been approved by the relevant consent authority;

<sup>120</sup> Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979 (NSW) s 5.7(1).

- are overseen by a qualified heritage consultant;
- are not covered by the standard exemptions.

Some activities and works to State Heritage Register listed items are also exempt from formal approval under the *Heritage Act 1977* (standard exemptions). These standard exemptions are listed in a Schedule of Standard Exemptions which is given effect by Section 57(2) of the *Heritage Act 1977* (refer to Appendix A). It should be noted that standard exemptions do not permit the removal of any significant fabric, nor do they permit the removal of relics or Aboriginal objects.

The various types of exemptions are described in Appendix A, however Heritage NSW advise it is the responsibility of the proponent to ensure the proposed activities/works fall within these exemptions.

The proponent must also keep records of the decision made when undertaking the self-assessment of works and whether the proposed activities/works could be done under a standard exemption, and the works undertaken. These records do not need to be sent to Heritage NSW but must be kept for a reasonable period as they may be asked to be provided for audit and compliance purposes.

Works and activities not covered by the standard exemptions must be submitted to the NSW Heritage Council for separate approval (Section 60 or s60 Fast Track) under the Heritage Act prior to being undertaken.

## 5.8. Implications arising from Physical Condition

The Fort Scratchley Historic Site consists of several sub-complexes of buildings with additional structures that were erected during different phases of development as the operational needs of the Fort changed. Despite these numerous changes, the subject site continues to exhibit building forms and fabric that were part of the site's original design. The site was assessed in 1979 as part of the reconstruction works that were undertaken during the mid-1970s to 1980s and was assessed again in 2008 in preparation for the handover of the Fort from the Commonwealth Government to the City of Newcastle Council. Part of these works included upgrading of services and infrastructure to address statutory requirements. The overall condition of the buildings appears sound and is unlikely to impose constraints on future uses/works outlined in the conservation policies. However, the aggressive nature of the site's marine environment presents a major ongoing issue for the conservation of the Fort's concrete and cement rendered buildings, and sandstone elements. This requires a program and methodology of conservation. Other material conservation issues relating to the interiors include deterioration of rendered, painted and sandstone elements due to rising and falling damp, salt attack and corrosion of metal elements.

Although there have been moderate modifications to the overall site, these alterations are deemed appropriate in contributing to an understanding of the evolution of the place. As such, proposals to modify the configuration of these spaces must also consider the significance of these historic changes. Any future designs, or modifications, should be prepared in consultation with a suitably qualified heritage consultant. Whilst unsympathetic alterations intruding upon built fabric of exceptional significance may be removed, it is advised that the impact of their removal on the built fabric is also considered.

## 5.9. Owner/Manager Requirements

The ongoing use and management of the site as a military museum and public recreation space is supported by the policies of this CMP that aim to meet the operational and strategic requirements of the site. The 2013 Plan of Management identified numerous key issues associated with managing the heritage significance of the site, namely, the costs arising from the maintenance of physical deterioration (which is further magnified by the lack of a proactive and prioritised maintenance schedule), a lack of necessary resources and skills to manage and conserve the Fort Scratchley site, and limited funding opportunities to generate revenue to further develop the place. These issues may have been updated in the draft Plan of Management (2024) and therefore consideration will need to be given to any issues resolved or newly identified.



At a minimum, the City of Newcastle Council as the owner of the Fort Scratchley site must recognise its statutory obligations to effectively care for and manage the site in accordance with the *Minimum standards of maintenance and repair for heritage items* (as outlined in the *Heritage Act 1977* and *Heritage Regulation 2012*).

The City of Newcastle Council Museum Archives Libraries & Learning (MALL) Service Unit, which currently oversees the site's management, should also explore the following to address the aforementioned concerns:

- The nomination of Scratchley to the National Heritage List would provide additional funding opportunities through the Australian Heritage Grants programme.
- The development of a proactive maintenance schedule.
- Succession planning for the Fort Scratchley Historical Society.

### 5.10. Future Development

Future development at Fort Scratchley presents opportunities for providing additional revenue streams for the site and improving visitor experiences. However, future development and uses of the site should be informed by principles outlined in this CMP and should be sympathetic to the significant values of Fort Scratchley.

Principally, future development at Fort Scratchley should be determined by the:

- developments permitted under the Heritage Act 1977 and its standard exemptions;
- activities and developments permitted under the Newcastle LEP 2012;
- purposes consistent with the core objectives for the management of Community Land under the *Local Government Act 1993*;
  - For the purposes of the *Local Government Act 1993*, the Fort Scratchley Historic Site is categorised as an area of cultural significance.
- purposes consistent with the policies of this CMP.

In general terms, all buildings, structures and landscape elements in the inner fort precinct should be conserved and retained, and new development should not be encouraged in this zone (barring the introduction of temporary structures in identified areas of lower relative significance). New development should be permitted within areas of the outer fort precinct as indicated in the following table adapted from the 2013 Plan of Management. Any new developments or adaptive re-use must be carried out strictly in accordance with the policies of this CMP.

Zone Precinct	Description	Facilities/Development	Notes
Outer Fort Precinct Zone 1	Open area forming the western side of the entry driveway entrance to the site.	Clear open space.	<p>Development must not introduce new permanent structures.</p> <p>Any future changes to the playground located near the Nobbys Road entrance should be sympathetic to the character of the place, including its setting and significant views.</p> <p>Temporary structures may be installed in this zone but must comply with the conditions and standards of the standard exemptions under Section 57(2) of the Heritage Act 1977. The</p>

Zone Precinct	Description	Facilities/Development	Notes	
			exemptions prohibit activities/works that involve alterations to (including penetrations), damage to, or the removal of, significant fabric.	
Inner Fort Precinct Zone 2	Encompasses the Inner Fort and is the most important zone in terms of significant and original structures.	Intervention affecting original fabric i.e.:	Intervention into significant fabric must not be permitted except where unavoidable for essential services or provision of safety infrastructure.	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ removal of or alteration to original fabric;</li> <li>▪ alteration to exterior;</li> <li>▪ extension of buildings;</li> <li>▪ infill development.</li> </ul>		
		Limited and strictly controlled alteration to interior fabric and internal spaces.		This type of development should only be undertaken with the approval of the Council and only as essential for interpretation of the spaces.
		New pathways and ramps.		New pathways and ramps should be permissible only in areas where precedence for pathways and paved areas existed previously e.g. around the parade ground and barbette structures.
		Handrails.		The introduction of handrails should be limited where necessary for safety and accessibility purposes.
		Temporary structures.	Temporary structures should be installed only where they will not have significant impacts to heritage fabric, i.e. around the parade ground or along the grassed areas of the Fort's northern and eastern sides.  Temporary structures must comply with the conditions and standards of the standard exemptions under Section 57(2) of the Heritage Act 1977.	
Outer Fort Precinct	Encompasses main driveway entrance	Limited redevelopment potential.	Development should be limited to the exception of passive	

Zone Precinct	Description	Facilities/Development	Notes
Zone 3	and the Master Gunner's Cottage.		recreation and essential services such as parking.
		Gates and fencing.	New gates and fencing should be designed to have detailing based on traditionally detailed perimeter fencing located elsewhere on site. It should also be small in scale to minimise impact on views and vistas.
Outer Fort Precinct Zone 4	Encompasses the Hall and Workshop buildings.	Modifications only, outside view corridor	Modification or low-scale infill development should only be permitted where it might impact the new structures only (Hall and Workshop buildings).  Undeveloped curtilage to Masters Gunner's cottage, on to the dry ditch extents and to the views of the Fort's walls must remain unaffected by new development
		Temporary structures.	Temporary structures should be installed only where they will not have significant impacts to heritage fabric, i.e. in existing car parking spaces or grassed areas around the Hall and Workshop buildings.  Temporary structures must comply with the conditions and standards of the standard exemptions under Section 57(2) of the Heritage Act 1977.
Outer Fort Precinct Zone 5	Open area fronting Nobbys Road.	Potential redevelopment site	The western precinct may be redeveloped with new built permanent structures which do not exceed a height that would interrupt views to the Fort's walls and barracks complex.  Temporary structures may be introduced in this area and must comply with the conditions and standards of the standard exemptions under Section 57(2) of the Heritage Act 1977.








Table 5. Table of zones at Fort Scratchley and their permissible uses.





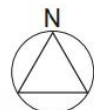
Figure 5 - Heritage Map  
 FORT SCRATCHLEY



LEGEND	
	Development Zones
Heritage Significance	
	Exceptional
	High
	Moderate
	Low
	None
	Intrusive

Development Zones

- 1 - Clear open space, no built development, no new permanent structures
- 2 - No new structures or intrusive development
- 3 - Limited development potential
- 4 - Modifications only, outside view corridor
- 5 - Potential redevelopment site



Maps prepared by The City of Newcastle Landscape Architectural Services for the Fort Scratchley Plan of Management - July 2012

Figure 272. Fort Scratchley permissible development map. (Source: Fort Scratchley Plan of Management, City of Newcastle Council, September 2013)

## 6. CONSERVATION POLICIES

### 6.1. Introduction

The following conservation policies have been developed in response to the assessment of significance of the site, with consideration of the history of the place, statutory obligations, and the physical condition of its building fabric.

The general conservation policies are intended as a guide for the care of Fort Scratchley to enable the identified character and heritage significance of the place to be retained, while maintaining the usefulness and viability of the former defence complex, its components, and its setting. The policies are intended to:

- Retain the significant character and quality of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site, together with significant views and vistas, and its cultural landscape setting;
- Permit alterations, adaptations and new works that are compatible with the above and make the place more effective in its principal intended use as a transport facility;
- Identify elements that adversely affect the place and require modification or removal;
- Provide an approach to the replacement of deteriorated fabric;
- Draw attention to the need for co-ordination of the conservation needs of the place both in the short term and over the longer life of the building with the other functional and technical aspects and requirements of the place;
- Identify any areas of potential development on the site within the constraints of maintaining heritage significance and where appropriate provide guidance to the form of development; and
- Seek design excellence.

### 6.2. Acceptable Actions Generally

The treatment of existing components, spaces, building fabric, and the site should be in accordance with their assessed level of significance and generally as set out in the following table:

Level of Significance	Acceptable Action
<b>Exceptional significance</b>	Preservation, restoration or reconstruction. Adaptation in accordance with Burra Charter guidelines may also be acceptable provided the change is compatible with retaining the overall significance of the place.
<b>High significance</b>	Preservation, restoration or reconstruction. Adaptation in accordance with Burra Charter guidelines may also be acceptable provided the change is compatible with retaining the overall significance of the place.
<b>Moderate significance</b>	Preservation, restoration, reconstruction or adaptation to assist in ensuring the continual use and security of the building provided that no adverse effect is created to more significant fabric.
<b>Little significance</b>	More radical adaptation treatment of fabric with some significance may be acceptable to ensure the continual usability and security of the place as a whole.
<b>Intrusive</b>	Modification or removal in order that the significance of the building is enhanced by reduction of adverse effect.

In general terms, an adverse effect on any item or aspect of lesser significance may be permitted provided:

- It makes possible the recovery of aspects of greater significance;
- It helps to secure the future of the place;
- There is no feasible alternative; and
- Care is taken to minimise the adverse effect.

### 6.3. Policy Recommendations

The recommended numbered policies are set out in italics and presented in a coloured block. They are generally preceded by a contextual background containing supporting information. The policies should be read in conjunction with the associated text as this will make the context clear and aid interpretation.

Future decision-making in relation to specific buildings within the heritage curtilage of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site should be guided by the following general principles:

- Repair rather than replace;
- Make reversible alterations;
- Make a subtle visual distinction between old and new works to buildings;
- Ensure alterations are sympathetic;
- Respect the aging process and respect previous alterations;
- Discontinue previous unsound repair practices;
- Stabilise problem areas;
- Respect the building's context and location; and
- Respect contents.

### 6.4. Basis of Conservation Approach

The following conservation policies have been developed in response to the assessment of significance of Fort Scratchley and its setting, with consideration of the history of the place, its physical condition, and statutory heritage obligations. The following policies reflect the principles contained in The Burra Charter, which is generally accepted as the primary guiding document for the conservation of places of cultural heritage significance throughout Australia.

The Burra Charter provides general guidance for the conservation and management of places of cultural significance including natural, Aboriginal and historic places with cultural values. It sets out a standard of practice, including definitions, conservation principles and processes, to assist owners, managers and custodians in making decisions or undertaking works to a place of cultural heritage significance.

<b><i>Policy 1</i></b>	<p><i>All development proposed for the Fort Scratchley Historic Site, its components, and setting, including maintenance programs, new works, and adaptive re-use, should be undertaken with reference to:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>the principles of the Australia ICOMOS Charter for the Conservation of Places of Cultural Significance: The Burra Charter, and</i></li> <li>▪ <i>the conservation policies of this CMP.</i></li> </ul>
<b><i>Policy 2</i></b>	<p><i>The Statement of Significance and schedule of significant spaces, fabric and elements in this plan, together with any more detailed assessments of individual items, should be adopted as the basis for future decision making, planning and work on the place.</i></p>



**Policy 3**      *The recommended policies and conservation options discussed in this document should be adopted as a guide to future conservation and development of the place.*

**Policy 4**      *The appropriate conservation process for each element of the place should be determined based on the relative significance ranking of the element and its contribution to the significance of the place as a whole.*

## 6.5. Management of the Heritage Asset

The Fort Scratchley Historic Site contains museum, office, retail and venue spaces. At present, the Hall building - or Function Centre - is available for hire for private events and functions, including weddings, conferences and meetings. For events held during the Fort's regular opening hours, guests are permitted to explore the site outside of the Hall, however, there is an additional fee charged to open the Fort to guests if they wish to explore the Fort's grounds after opening hours. The Barracks building (**Building 7**) has also previously been used as venue hire space due to its two large barrack rooms and western verandah which offers views over the Hunter River towards the CBD. Bookings for the site are made via the Venues Team at the City of Newcastle Council who are also responsible for the provision of food and beverage for events on-site. A separate team within Council, the Museum Archives Libraries & Learning (MALL) Service Unit, is responsible for the site's security, asset maintenance, and marketing and promotion. The day-to-day management of the site is the responsibility of the Fort Scratchley Historical Society.

This arrangement requires a management structure that is able to oversee the coordination of different parties who perform work onsite, while providing a cohesive and strategic vision for the site's long term management that ensures effective conservation and retention of the site's significant values. Currently, the Fort Scratchley Historic Site is managed by MALL Service Unit within the City of Newcastle Council who also oversee the Newcastle Museum, Archive, and Libraries.

**Policy 5**      *Fort Scratchley should remain in public ownership under the control of an authority with skills and experience in the management of historic sites.*

**Policy 6**      *The MALL Service Unit within the City of Newcastle Council should remain the primary asset manager of the Fort Scratchley site. As asset managers, the MALL Service Unit should be responsible for the care and presentation of the Fort Scratchley site.*

**Policy 7**      *The Fort Scratchley asset manager should continue to liaise closely on issues concerning the conservation of Fort Scratchley with other relevant departments and teams in the City of Newcastle Council.*

**Policy 8**      *Any leasing arrangements should be subject to the relevant provisions of this CMP and have sufficient force to ensure continued compliance.*

## 6.6. Statutory Listing

The Fort Scratchley Historic Site is identified as a heritage item on several statutory and non-statutory heritage registers. It is included on the following registers attached to statutory legislation:

- The Fort Scratchley Historic Site is included on the NSW State Heritage Register as part of the Coal River Precinct listing, no. 01674.
- The Fort Scratchley group is listed individually on the NSW State Heritage Inventory, no 2170240.
- The Fort Scratchley group of buildings is listed as an item on Schedule 5 of the Newcastle Local Environmental Plan 2012, I480.

The Fort Scratchley is located within the Newcastle East Heritage Conservation Area identified on maps attached to the Newcastle LEP 2012 and protected under the *Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979*. Fort Scratchley within the wider Coal River Precinct has previously been nominated to the National Heritage List, however, it is currently ineligible for nomination due to statutory regulations. Future nominations will make the site eligible again for consideration by the Commonwealth Government, however, future nominations should be supported by further research (refer to Policy 107).

**Policy 9**                      *Fort Scratchley should continue to be listed as a heritage item under the Newcastle LEP 2012.*

**Policy 10**                     *Fort Scratchley should continue to be included within the Newcastle East Heritage Conservation Area protected under the Newcastle LEP 2012.*

**Policy 11**                     *Fort Scratchley should continue to be listed as a heritage item on the NSW State Heritage Register under the Coal River Precinct listing.*

## 6.7. Sustainability

The City of Newcastle Council, as a signatory of the United Nations Sustainable Development Goals, has taken steps to reduce its carbon emissions and in 2020 became the first Local Government Area in NSW to achieve net 100% renewable electricity. The Council anticipates a reduction to net zero emissions for its operations by 2030. To support these sustainable development objectives, the Newcastle Climate Action Plan 2021-2025 identifies low emissions development and encourages clean technology as potential strategies for implementation and adoption. This is reflected in the Newcastle Development Control Plan 2023 which will take effect from 1 March 2023.

**Policy 12**                     *The City of Newcastle Council, as owner of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site, should explore ways to incorporate sustainable technologies within the place during phases of change while minimising adverse impacts of associated new development on significant fabric, spaces, and the site's setting and views. Specialist advice should be sought in the design and implementation of these works.*

## 6.8. Aboriginal and Archaeological Resources

<b>Policy 13</b>	<p><i>The design and implementation of future works, particularly those that require excavation, should refer to the provisions and directions contained in the National Parks and Wildlife Act 1974 and the following City of Newcastle Council documents (and their future revisions):</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <i>City of Newcastle Aboriginal Heritage Management Strategy 2018-2021.</i></li> <li>▪ <i>City of Newcastle Heritage Strategy 2020-2030.</i></li> <li>▪ <i>City of Newcastle Heritage Strategy Action Plan.</i></li> <li>▪ <i>Section 5.10 of the Newcastle Local Environmental Plan 2012.</i></li> <li>▪ <i>Section B4 of the Newcastle Development Control Plan 2023.</i></li> </ul>
------------------	--

## 6.9. Curtilage, Setting and Views

Fort Scratchley is a significant site occupying a prominent position on top Signal Hill which is crucial to its significance as a landmark. The landscape and setting of Fort Scratchley is an important element of the site's setting that contributes to its significance as a historical coastal fortification. The Fort's operation relied on the generally barren nature of the landscape for effective observation. In recent years, low level landscaping consisting of low shrubs and ground covers including native species of dunal grass have been used as necessary to suppress Bitou and other weed infestations. New plantings at the site may be appropriate, however, their selection must consider any adverse impacts to the character of the site in conjunction with their potential benefits. The construction of the Hall and Workshop buildings have not intruded on the significance of the site due to their sympathetic design and materiality with the rest of Fort Scratchley, particularly the fortification walls.

<b>Policy 14</b>	<i>The Fort Scratchley Historic Site should be managed as a cultural landscape and setting for the Fort complex.</i>
<b>Policy 15</b>	<i>Future development at and around the Fort Scratchley site should be guided by the relevant provisions concerning permissible development in the Newcastle East Heritage Conservation Area to conserve the site's significant views and setting.</i>
<b>Policy 16</b>	<i>The ongoing maintenance of Fort Scratchley's landscape should be managed under a Landscape Management Plan prepared by a suitable qualified arborist or cultural heritage landscape specialist.</i>
<b>Policy 17</b>	<i>The selection of plantings at the site must consider adverse heritage impacts to the site's significant values and character in addition to their weed management potential. The management of these plantings should be consistent with the existing landmark characteristics of the site and must not disrupt significant views to and from the site.</i>
<b>Policy 18</b>	<i>Historical landscape elements, such as fences and paths, may be reconstructed consistent with the principles of the Burra Charter, for operational and safety purposes or interpretation. The design and installation of new landscape elements must be sympathetic with the overall character of the Fort and must not adversely impact significant fabric, unless it is a safety or statutory requirement.</i>



## 6.10. Parking

At present, car parking spaces are provided to visitors in the outer fort adjacent to the Hall building. The provision of parking spaces on site should continue to be managed so as not to impact on the outer fort's significance, including significant views to and from the Fort and the outer fort in particular.

<b>Policy 19</b>	<i>Car parking should not be permitted within the inner fort and should only be accessed by vehicles for maintenance and for the movement of oversized items, at strictly controlled times outside hours of opening to the public.</i>
<b>Policy 20</b>	<i>Future works to increase parking capacity should be located within the outer fort precinct and should not adversely impact significant buildings in the outer fort or interrupt significant views to and from the site.</i>
<b>Policy 21</b>	<i>Parking should only be permitted in designated areas and should not be permitted on grassed or landscaped areas.</i>

## 6.11. Ongoing and Compatible Uses

At present, Fort Scratchley operates as a public military museum with a function centre located within the Hall building available for hire. Policies relating to the ongoing use of the site should aim to support the continuing use of the site, however, they should be balanced with the impact of tourism on the significant values of the site, as well as the impact on the built fabric, particularly in light of the harsh environmental conditions. The construction of the Hall building in the outer fort presents opportunities to provide amenities and event spaces to visitors without impacting on the significant fabric in the inner fort, allowing the ongoing use of the inner fort buildings for educational purposes which has fewer implications for potential adverse heritage impacts.

<b>Policy 22</b>	<i>Primary use of Fort Scratchley should be directed towards public understanding, appreciation and enjoyment of the place, consistent with the conservation of its significant fabric, spaces, objects, archaeology, views and setting, and the continued use of parts of the site for navigation and scientific purposes.</i>
<b>Policy 23</b>	<i>Conservation requirements and objectives should take precedence over all other considerations.</i>
<b>Policy 24</b>	<i>Uses with servicing, structural or spatial requirements that would have a major adverse impact on the character and significance of the place or its elements are unacceptable.</i>
<b>Policy 25</b>	<i>Complementary and ancillary uses may be acceptable if they do not have an adverse impact on the significant spaces, fabric, objects, archaeology, views and setting of the place.</i>
<b>Policy 26</b>	<i>Future development on the site should aim to maximise the compatible use of existing spaces, and minimise the construction of new structures, consistent with avoiding adverse impacts on significant spaces, fabric, objects, archaeology, views and setting.</i>
<b>Policy 27</b>	<i>Spaces assessed with a significance rating of exceptional or high should be used for interpretation of the site. Any other activity proposed should be considered only if it can be demonstrated there is no potential impact on significant fabric or spaces, arising from such activity.</i>

<b>Policy 28</b>	<i>Spaces assessed to be of moderate significance may be considered for essential operational purposes but should otherwise be available for interpretation.</i>
<b>Policy 29</b>	<i>Spaces assessed to be of little significance may be used for management, interpretation, concession or storage purposes.</i>
<b>Policy 30</b>	<i>Spaces and elements assessed to be intrusive should be removed or be replaced with sympathetic alternatives.</i>

## 6.12. Future Development

The Fort Scratchley Historic Site has undergone several phases of development due to the evolving operational requirements of the place as a military fortification. However, since the military occupation of the site ceased in 1972, subsequent development programs have been aimed at reconstruction, refurbishment and general upgrading of services to address statutory and safety requirements.

While future works may be required to ensure the ongoing use of the place, they should not impact on identified heritage values.

<b>Policy 31</b>	<i>New development may be permitted within certain areas of the outer fort precinct as outlined in Section 5.10. Any new development or adaptive reuse will be carried out strictly in accordance with the policies of this CMP.</i>
<b>Policy 32</b>	<i>Should circumstances in the future give rise to changes of use, new uses should be selected which are most compatible with the retention and recovery of the character and primary significance of the place.</i>
<b>Policy 33</b>	<i>Uses with structural, spatial or building services requirements that would have a strong adverse effect on the character and significance of the place, its components, and/or its setting are unacceptable.</i>
<b>Policy 34</b>	<i>Where appropriate compliance with building regulations should be achieved using their objectives and performance requirements rather than deemed-to-satisfy requirements.</i>
<b>Policy 35</b>	<i>All proposed works must be reviewed by the Fort Scratchley asset manager (refer to <b>Policy 6</b>), or their delegate, prior to the works being carried out or an application is lodged on behalf of Fort Scratchley with a consent authority. The asset manager will administer and/or monitor heritage aspects of the works on behalf of the City of Newcastle Council.</i>
<b>Policy 36</b>	<i>New work should be recognisable as new work and not imitate the original design details.</i>
<b>Policy 37</b>	<i>Prior to the undertaking of any major conservation, maintenance or upgrading works on elements, spaces or fabric that are not exempt under the standard exemptions, a Statement of Heritage Impact must be prepared which:</i>  <i>(i) Verifies the assessment of cultural significance of the affected area/s, or fabric, through detailed investigation, recording and evaluation by a conservation professional.</i>

(ii) Confirms the appropriate conservation policies applicable to the level of significance and the level of intervention proposed.

(iii) Sets out a detailed comprehensive specification of conservation actions (schedule of conservation works) applicable to the situation based on the identified conservation policies of this plan.

(iv) Is incorporated as a component of the brief to other consultants involved in the works.

(v) Is retained by the Fort Scratchley asset manager for future reference.

**Policy 38** Essential external works shall be strictly controlled to ensure compatible and appropriate design to minimise impacts on the fabric of the façades, and integrity of the structures.

**Policy 39** The interior configuration of and circulation through the buildings at Fort Scratchley must be retained and conserved.

**Policy 40** Interior fit outs and alterations should only be allowed to improve visitor access and interpretation. Internal fit outs should be sympathetic to the nature of the space and reversible to minimise impact on significant fabric.

**Policy 41** All work in the building relating to adaptation or reinstatement should be undertaken based on known evidence. Conjecture, guesswork or prejudiced decision making are not acceptable.

**Policy 42** Retention, enhancement and recovery of the cultural significance of the place should be adopted and implemented as opportunities arise, taking into consideration the changing needs of the Owner, availability of funds and other constraints.

**Policy 43** All buildings, structures and landscape elements in the inner fort precinct should be retained and conserved, and new development must comply with **Policy 39**. Landscape elements must also be managed in line with the Landscape Management Plan detailed in **Policy 16**.

**Policy 44** Where the introduction of temporary structures does not comply with the conditions and standards of the standard exemptions, a suitably qualified heritage consultant should be engaged to negotiate a site-specific exemption for Fort Scratchley with the NSW Heritage Council.



## 6.13. Treatment of Building Fabric

The significance ratings and implications of the existing fabric provide a general guide for opportunities for future change to Fort Scratchley. All conservation and adaptive reuse work should be based on retention of a maximum of original fabric and should involve the least possible amount of physical intervention.

### 6.13.1. Investigation

**Policy 45** *Site fabric investigations should be carried out in limited circumstances, i.e. to facilitate structural remediation or restoration, and should be undertaken in a careful manner to expose earlier fabric layers that are at present covered or inaccessible. Such investigation might include paint scrapes that in limited circumstances would assist in understanding previous finishes or the preparation of new painted finishes.*

### 6.13.2. External Form and Internal Spaces

The buildings comprising the Fort Scratchley Historic Site continue to display their original forms, with only the form of the Gunners' Ablutions building changing after its original lean-to roof was replaced by a gable roof following the removal of its water tank system. The retention of the current external forms of these buildings is essential to the significant values of the site and its interpretation as a nineteenth century military site that underwent changes over the period of its use.

Alterations to the roofscape form of the barracks complex should be avoided as the verandah system contributes to the character of the barracks complex, including the manner of circulation between the individual spaces and buildings. Alterations to the WWII concrete bunker style flat roofs should also be avoided as they contribute directly to the significance of these buildings and their display of evolving construction techniques within the site. New works should not obscure or obliterate original detail.

Consideration can be given to the removal or adaptation of the Hall and Workshop buildings in the outer fort as they were constructed during the 2005-2008 works and are ranked as having little heritage significance in this CMP.

**Policy 46** *Retain and conserve the external and internal elements and features associated with the buildings comprising the Fort Scratchley Historic Site. This includes rendered walls, decorative moulded elements, windows, and doors, and their materiality.*

**Policy 47** *The buildings should retain their overall external form and internal spaces with work to areas and components of greater significance generally restricted to preservation and restoration (and reconstruction in areas and components of high significance). Proposed work that may have an adverse impact on the exterior form and qualities of the building are unacceptable.*

**Policy 48** *Limited adaptation, that does not adversely affect the character or significance of the place as a whole, may be permitted in areas of lowest significance or limited visual prominence subject to consent approval of detailed documentation.*

**Policy 49** *Unsympathetic attachments, fittings, air-conditioners, surface conduits etc should not be specified or constructed for significant visible external and internal areas comprising the Fort Scratchley Historic Site.*

### 6.13.3. Roof Fabric and Features

The roofs at the Fort Scratchley Historic Site have been repaired or replaced at various dates, incorporating a range of materials and details. The roofs of the barracks complex are generally corrugated iron hipped roofs with corbelled brick chimneys, or flat reinforced concrete roofs in the case of the Old Guardhouse and its extension. The NCOs' Ablutions have a shallow pitched corrugated iron lean-to roof, separate to the rest of the barracks complex.

<b>Policy 50</b>	<i>The original roof forms, parapets, and embrasures of the buildings at Fort Scratchley should be retained. Any repair, adaptation, or replacement of material should retain the original qualities and profiles.</i>
<b>Policy 51</b>	<i>Regular inspection of all guttering, storm water disposal systems, and lightning protection, should be undertaken to ensure effective weather protection of the building.</i>
<b>Policy 52</b>	<i>Where required all replacement or repairs to metal roof and accessories including flashings, gutters and downpipes must be formed in traditional shapes. Where metal meets other materials, ensure compatibility to avoid electrolytic corrosion and general deterioration.</i>
<b>Policy 53</b>	<i>Repairs or replacement of chimney structures must be formed in traditional shapes.</i>

### 6.13.4. Decorative Finishes

Works to decorative painted finishes are to be undertaken by suitably experienced specialists and records of changes retained by the Fort Scratchley asset manager, to inform future works.

Records should include:

- Details and photographs the area investigated by paint scrapes as evidence of previous colours and finish techniques;
- Identification of British Standard, Australian Standard or Munsell equivalents of colours identified in scraped area;
- Record of the re-painting scheme (colours, paint type) that relates to the principal phase of decoration of the space.

<b>Policy 54</b>	<i>All exterior and interior unpainted surfaces originally intended to be unpainted, should remain unpainted.</i>
<b>Policy 55</b>	<i>A co-ordinated approach should be adopted to the arrangement of colours and finishes throughout the site. It should be based on an understanding of the original and early decorative treatments and should be prepared in advance for future decorative treatments. Do not introduce conjectural reconstruction with historic styling or motifs.</i>
<b>Policy 56</b>	<i>Seek specialist advice whenever painting is contemplated for spaces of building fabric identified as exceptional or high heritage significance. Only authenticated heritage colour schemes or decorative finishes should be adopted.</i>
<b>Policy 57</b>	<i>Surface preparation for new paintworks is to be undertaken by suitably experienced Contractors, and consistent with Heritage NSW recommendations</i>

*and best-practice heritage principles, to ensure the retention of evidence of original and early decorative finishes.*

**Policy 58**

*Where new materials and finishes are introduced, the physical evidence of former finishes should be retained beneath for later interpretation.*

### 6.13.5. Interior and Exterior Lighting

The primary means of interior lighting in the Fort Scratchley Historic Site is a combination of natural lighting and incandescent lamps. However, the numerous window bays present on all elevations of the barracks evidence traditional means of lighting interiors. This is also evidenced in the tunnels system which contain lamp recesses constructed within the wall fabric, contributing to the character of Fort Scratchley as a nineteenth century military fortification.

Since the original construction of the site, additional luminaires have been installed to meet use requirements during the Army's ongoing occupation until 1972, as well as statutory requirements and for safe egress. Original lamp recesses in the tunnels system should continue to be retained and conserved.

Where appropriate, contemporary luminaires should be retrofitted with LED lamps to assist in the reduction of greenhouse gas emissions in keeping with the objectives of the Newcastle Climate Action Plan 2021-2025. The exterior spaces at Fort Scratchley are able to be lit at night by a combination of flood lights and spot lamps contained within the verandah system.

**Policy 59**

*Original light fittings in significant spaces are to be retained and retro fitted as necessary. Lighting in those interiors that are currently of little significance may continue to be lit in the way most appropriate to the technical requirements of the space.*

**Policy 60**

*Original light fittings should be retained in-situ and only replaced as necessary to address statutory energy efficiency requirements. The addition of LED fittings should be permitted following consultation with a qualified lighting designer to ensure that the character of the place and its spaces are retained.*

**Policy 61**

*A co-ordinated approach to lighting throughout the buildings should be developed using a family of fittings approximate to the character of the rooms and their functions.*

**Policy 62**

*A coordinated approach to external lighting throughout the site should be developed using a family of fittings approximate to the historic character of the parade ground and tunnels complex.*

**Policy 63**

*A coordinated approach to external lighting should be adopted having regard to the historic character of building and its immediate setting in Coal River Precinct generally. External lighting should not be fixed to significant fabric.*



### 6.13.6. Signage

The Fort Scratchley Historic Site contains a range of interior and external signage including:

- Directional signage, guidance and information;
- Regulatory signage;
- Interpretive signage.

The inner fort buildings and tunnels system evidence examples of remnant stencilled signage painted directly on to surfaces, modern stencilled signage painted directly on to surfaces, directional signage panels, interpretive signage panels and cast metal plaques. Stylistic attributes of signage are generally consistent across their typologies and can be recognised as belonging to separate phases of development.

**Policy 64**      *Removal of existing signage from fabric ranked as having exceptional or high significance should require approval to ensure there is no further adverse impacts to the significance of the building or its setting.*

**Policy 65**      *Existing signage, identified as part of the original fabric or ranked as having exceptional or high heritage significance in this CMP, must be retained and conserved in situ. Fort Scratchley is to maintain a record of significant signage including photographs of each sign, and noting dimensions, materials, finishes, in detail sufficient to repair or replicate in the event a sign is damaged or lost.*

**Policy 66**      *Redundant recently introduced signage, identified on site in conjunction with a suitable experienced heritage consultant, should be removed and relocated within the site or stored on site in an agreed location.*

### 6.13.7. Hazardous Materials

During the 2005-2008 works, the Fort Scratchley Historic Site was thoroughly inspected for hazardous materials, including asbestos, oil, coal tar and chemical contaminants. These have since been either removed, stabilised or capped and contained, then retested as part of a parallel project to the conservation and infrastructure upgrade project.

In the event that further hazardous materials are discovered on site, immediate steps should be undertaken to protect staff and visitors to the site and to notify the Fort Scratchley asset manager for further instructions.

**Policy 67**      *The Fort Scratchley asset manager must, in consultation with suitable qualified and experienced experts, continue to document and monitor hazardous materials on-site and advise if they are to be retained, removed or encapsulated as required by Local, State, and/or Commonwealth legislation.*

**Policy 68**      *Should further research identify other hazardous materials, ensure that a program monitors these elements in accordance with SafeWork NSW and other regulatory authorities.*

### 6.13.8. Maintenance

Appropriate and prompt maintenance and repair is an essential component of the conservation of any significant place. Failure to carry out such works contributes to the deterioration of the fabric of the building and requires significant levels of repair/replacement works which would have been either unnecessary or of considerably less impact had the appropriate maintenance been carried out. The City of Newcastle Council, as the site owner, has a statutory obligation to care for the place in line with the *Minimum standards of maintenance and repair for heritage items* (refer to Section 5.9). The Council should adopt simple strategies for regular inspections and maintenance and have oversight of the activities of maintenance contractors.

<b>Policy 69</b>	<i>Only persons with relevant qualifications and experience should be employed to undertake maintenance or building works. When required by the Heritage Act 1977 and its Regulation, maintenance contractors should work under the direction of a suitably experienced heritage architect and in consultation with the Fort Scratchley asset manager to ensure a consistent on-going approach to repairs and maintenance works to the Fort Scratchley Historic Site.</i>
<b>Policy 70</b>	<i>On-site contractors must always exercise care to ensure significant fabric is protected and conserved.</i>
<b>Policy 71</b>	<i>The City of Newcastle should develop a cyclical maintenance plan to guide ongoing maintenance and management of the place. The plan should identify and prioritise maintenance in accordance with the policies of this CMP and should be updated every five years.</i>
<b>Policy 72</b>	<i>The cyclical maintenance plan of Fort Scratchley's buildings is to be informed by a comprehensive knowledge of the buildings and their materials, regular inspection and prompt preventative maintenance and repair.</i>
<b>Policy 73</b>	<i>Minor maintenance works to the buildings at Fort Scratchley may be carried out, provided they are consistent with certain requirements, be carried out under the standard exemptions to the Heritage Act and would not require a Development Application. Where there is any doubt, the advice of an independent heritage architect should be sought.</i>
<b>Policy 74</b>	<i>Where unforeseen significant heritage fabric or relics are discovered during works, works shall cease where practicable until the subject fabric has been viewed and assessed by a suitably experienced heritage consultant, and their conservation recommendation implemented.</i>
<b>Policy 75</b>	<i>Previous maintenance or repair works using inappropriate materials or methods should be replaced when practicable using appropriate materials and finishes matched to the typology of buildings. Alternative repair methodologies may be submitted for approval by the Fort Scratchley asset manager to minimise potential adverse heritage impacts arising from incompatible repairs/materials.</i>

### 6.13.9. Graffiti Removal

Any graffiti discovered on the building should be removed promptly using a graffiti removal system specifically designed for the substrate material.

**Policy 76**      *Seek professional advice from a built heritage specialist in relation to the removal of graffiti where there is a risk of alteration or damage to site significant fabric.*

### 6.13.10. Compliance with Codes and Regulations

The National Construction Code of Australia, (BCA) is the operative building ordinance for the continuing use and reuse of the Fort Scratchley site. The BCA regulates issues such as structural adequacy, fire resistance, access and egress, firefighting equipment, mechanical ventilation and certain aspects of health and amenity. Other ordinances that may apply include the:

- *Work Health and Safety Act 2011 and Work Health and Safety Regulation 2017; and*
- *Disability Discrimination Act 1992 and Disability (Access to Premises - building) Standards 2010.*

As part of the wider Coal River Precinct, Fort Scratchley is a site of state significance. The Fort Scratchley asset manager should strive to provide for safe access to and egress from the site and its buildings, and a safe environment for workers and visitors. Works undertaken during the 2005-2008 refurbishment program included the provision of a stair chair at the western entrance steps to the casemates and accessible public lavatories throughout the site. However, many spaces within the site cannot currently be adapted to address accessibility requirements by virtue of the Fort's original construction and the level of intervention into significant fabric required to install ramps, incliners, or expand openings.

**Policy 77**      *Compliance with building codes and other regulations should be achieved by meeting the performance requirements of those codes through alternative solutions if the deemed to satisfy requirements cannot be met without adverse heritage impact. The design and implementation of performance based or engineered solutions should be undertaken in consultation with suitably qualified specialists.*

**Policy 78**      *Opportunities to provide equitable access through adaptation of the built fabric should be explored where it can be accomplished without adverse heritage impacts. The design and implementation of equitable access solutions should be undertaken in consultation with suitably qualified specialists.*



## 6.14. Moveable Heritage

The Fort Scratchley Historic Site contains a number of moveable heritage assets that contribute to the significance of the place and assist in understanding and interpreting the site's history and built fabric. This is particularly relevant for the tunnel system and battery complex where a number of the Fort's armaments are located, including the Nordenfelt quick firing gun, 80 lb RML guns and pair of 6 inch Mk VII guns located in the Nos. 1 and 2 gun emplacements. There is also a Bofors 40 mm gun located at the rear of the Master Gunner's Cottage. The Fort Scratchley Historical Society also owns, collects and displays several moveable heritage assets, including armaments, military hardware and fixtures in various areas of the Fort, such as the Commandant's Cottage and within the tunnels complex. The Fort Scratchley Historical Society undertakes maintenance and conservation of these assets in the Workshop building.

### **Policy 79**

*The ongoing management of moveable heritage at the Fort Scratchley Historic Site by the Fort Scratchley Historical Society continues as outlined in the Memorandum of Understanding between the City of Newcastle Council and the Fort Scratchley Historical Society. Management of moveable heritage should be guided by the Heritage NSW Moveable Heritage Principles.*

## 6.15. Protecting and Promoting Conservation

### 6.15.1. Interpretation

The history and development of the Signal Hill/Fort Scratchley site is currently available through interpretive panels located around the site, within buildings, and within the tunnels. The Fort Scratchley Historical Society website also hosts various multimedia resources relating to the history of Fort Scratchley and oral histories of the Fort are also available online.

The City of Newcastle Council's Heritage Strategy 2020-2030 provides further opportunities to interpret Aboriginal peoples' associations with the land around Newcastle and recognises that Aboriginal cultural heritage should be recognised as a "finite and valuable resource of the Newcastle Local Government Area".<sup>121</sup> The Strategy also anticipates that further funding will be invested in the Fort Scratchley site as a significant heritage place relating to the early convict history of Newcastle.<sup>122</sup>

### **Policy 80**

*On-site interpretation at Fort Scratchley continues to be managed by the Fort Scratchley Historical Society per the Memorandum of Understanding between the City of Newcastle Council and the Fort Scratchley Historical Society, including collaboration with the City of Newcastle Council to develop strategic planning for the site's interpretation*

### **Policy 81**

*Fort Scratchley should be conserved, managed and operated holistically in consideration of all its heritage values.*

### **Policy 82**

*Conservation of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site should acknowledge the contribution of all significant phases to the history of the site, and conserve physical evidence that distinguishes different phases of development.*

<sup>121</sup> "Newcastle Heritage Strategy 2020-2030", City of Newcastle Council, accessed February 23, 2024, <https://newcastle.nsw.gov.au/getmedia/402df8eb-c7e3-4e60-b8d9-b15b77012ec6/4251-ADOPTED-Heritage-Strategy-2020-30-V4.pdf>, 25.

<sup>122</sup> "Newcastle Heritage Strategy 2020-2030", City of Newcastle Council, accessed February 23, 2024, <https://newcastle.nsw.gov.au/getmedia/402df8eb-c7e3-4e60-b8d9-b15b77012ec6/4251-ADOPTED-Heritage-Strategy-2020-30-V4.pdf>, 28.

### 6.15.2. Community Consultation

The City of Newcastle Council should consult with the Newcastle community and special interest groups to inform decisions about the future development and management of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site, and the community's changing expectations and needs.

Where appropriate the City of Newcastle Council will identify and consult with stakeholders including the traditional custodians of the place. Stakeholders are likely to include:

- Internal stakeholders within the City of Newcastle Council;
- Fort Scratchley Historical Society, <https://www.fortscratchley.org.au/>;
- Australian Heritage Council, <https://www.dcceew.gov.au/parks-heritage/heritage/organisations/australian-heritage-council>;
- NSW Department of Climate Change, Energy, the Environment and Water (Heritage Council of NSW), <https://www.environment.nsw.gov.au/topics/heritage>;
- Awabakal Local Aboriginal Land Council; and
- Owners of heritage-listed buildings in the vicinity.

**Policy 83**      *The City of Newcastle Council should, where appropriate, liaise with relevant stakeholders on issues relating to the ongoing management and use of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site, particularly in the design and implementation of future development works.*

### 6.15.3. Record Keeping

Fort Scratchley has developed over a long period since its original construction in the late nineteenth century and the documentary record of its development is inconsistent. Some changes have been documented in-depth and others are only briefly described.

**Policy 84**      *Changes to the place must be documented and recorded (before, during, and after works), to ensure a comprehensive understanding of the site can be appreciated by the asset manager and other relevant parties prior to making decisions that may impact the site's significant values.*

**Policy 85**      *A copy of this CMP should be stored on-site following its adoption. It must be referred to when making decisions about the site's ownership, management, or maintenance. Copies of this CMP should also be made accessible to stakeholders such as the City of Newcastle Council, Newcastle Library, Heritage NSW Heritage Online Library, the University of Newcastle, and members of the broader community.*

**Policy 86**      *A collection of records relating to the site, such as measured drawings, modern and historical photographs, contracts, file notes, Statements of Heritage Impacts, should be maintained. This archive should be made freely available, particularly for contractors and consultants engaged in works at Fort Scratchley.*

**Policy 87**      *An archival recording of works must be prepared when works are proposed that will impact on significant fabric in accordance with the NSW Heritage Council's guidelines.*

#### 6.15.4. Risk Management

As Fort Scratchley is a place of State heritage significance, it is important that risks to the property are well understood and managed. The potential impact of risks to the significant values and fabric of the place should be evaluated and managed by a disaster management plan.

**Policy 88** *A disaster management plan should be developed and maintained to guarantee the safety of all those at the place. It should include safety procedures to be followed in the event of an evacuation, fire or other emergencies, and the contact details of relevant parties*

#### 6.16. Adoption & Management of this CMP

This CMP should be reviewed at least once in every five year period, and following any major changes to the Fort Scratchley Historic Site, in a manner consistent with that set out in Section 38A(3) of the *Heritage Act 1977*. The review is to include the monitoring of the implementation of policies and recommendations undertaken under the previous CMP, and where necessary revise policies and recommendations to clarify issues.

**Policy 89** *A review of a CMP for places on the State Heritage Register is recommended at five yearly intervals or where works have the potential for substantial impacts on the heritage significance of the buildings and the setting.*

**Policy 90** *Any review of, or amendments to, this CMP must be undertaken by a suitably qualified heritage consultant or heritage architect.*



## 7. IMPLEMENTATION STRATEGY

### 7.1. Responsibility for Implementation of Policies

The Fort Scratchley asset manager shall be responsible for overseeing the implementation of policies contained in this CMP. Minor changes, relating to maintenance and day-to-day use of buildings, can generally be approved by the asset manager or their delegate, in consultation with an appropriately experienced heritage consultant.<sup>123</sup>

### 7.2. Funding

City of Newcastle Council, as the Owner, will continue to set aside appropriate funds to ensure the preventative maintenance and conservation of the heritage complex, its components, and setting can be carried out. Funding for other future development projects at the Fort Scratchley Historic Site may be made through the existing City of Newcastle Council organisational structure.

### 7.3. Review and Monitoring of Conservation Management Plan

The Fort Scratchley asset manager or their delegate, shall be responsible for monitoring, reporting, overseeing the review, and acting on information where necessary to protect the identified heritage significance of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site as a heritage item and as part of a cultural landscape.

The Fort Scratchley asset manager or their delegate, will review the works register annually to monitor the condition of fabric to ensure the identified heritage significance is managed according to the principles contained within this CMP, as well as best-practice heritage management principles and the Burra Charter.

This CMP should be reviewed within 10 years or earlier if major works undertaken to the site.

### 7.4. Resolution of Conflict Between User Needs and Heritage Significance

City of Newcastle Council may, from time to time, be required to deal with a conflict between the existing or proposed use of the Fort's buildings and conserving their heritage significance. For example, spatial requirements within Fort Scratchley may change, and surplus spaces may be adapted to accommodate new uses or leased to separate entities.

Major changes to the building and its components will be reviewed by the City of Newcastle Council preferably at an early stage of the proposal so any conflict between proposed works and heritage issues are resolved before the Fort Scratchley site commits to a particular course and to review documentation prior to notifying the consent authority.

Where the Fort Scratchley Historical Society or City of Newcastle Council's use of the Fort buildings conflicts with the conservation of their heritage significance, preference is to be given to those uses that are compatible with the Fort's significance. Early and informal liaison with relevant heritage stakeholders may be an integral part of this process.

---

<sup>123</sup> Minor works including maintenance of equipment, furniture, fittings and fixtures, or the heritage curtilage of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site.

## 7.5. Proposed Timing of Works

All future works will be guided by this CMP following its adoption by Newcastle Council.

The priority for the implementation of policies for conservation works is generally set out below, and the level of priority is summarised as:

PRIORITY	TIMING	ACTION
<b>High</b>	<1 year	Actions to be taken to rectify problems that could result in risk of damage, loss or deterioration of significant fabric, setting, or infrastructure.
<b>Medium</b>	1-5 years	Actions implemented within 1 to 5 years after the adoption of this CMP by City of Newcastle Council to reduce the risk of damage, loss or deterioration of significant fabric of Fort Scratchley, its components, and its setting.
<b>Low</b>	5-10 years	Actions planned as part of a long-term conservation or maintenance program, to maintain and enhance the significance of Fort Scratchley, its components, and its setting.

## 7.6. Recommended Conservation Works

Works to the Fort Scratchley Historic Site must balance operation requirements with statutory and heritage requirements. The owner, City of Newcastle Council and the MALL Service Unit (as asset manager) will, in consultation with the Fort Scratchley Historical Society, identify the groups and/or individual roles, responsible for maintaining the building, its components, and its setting. While some of the recommended conservation works are included in other management documents (e.g. Plan of Management), they have been reiterated here to ensure appropriate implementation of the priority items, and for compliance with the heritage best practice guidelines applicable to a CMP.

The following section recommends the priorities for implementation of the policies contained in the CMP.

PRIORITY	TASK DESCRIPTION
<b>High</b>	The City of Newcastle Council will adopt this CMP as the primary heritage document to guide future changes to the Fort Scratchley Historic Site, its buildings, landscape features, views, and cultural landscape.
<b>High</b>	Prepare a risk management strategy for the site, including strategies for the management of the built fabric and moveable heritage assets.
<b>High</b>	Prepare a cyclical maintenance plan for the Fort Scratchley Historic Site which identifies tasks, their frequency, and the necessary expertise required.
<b>High</b>	Carry out urgent repairs to the buildings, its components, and setting as required.
<b>Medium</b>	Prepare a revised Exhibition and Interpretation Strategy. This review should be undertaken in consultation with suitably qualified specialists.
<b>Medium</b>	Prepare a Landscape Management Plan. This Plan should be prepared by a suitably qualified arborist or cultural heritage landscape specialist.
<b>Medium</b>	Prepare a Signage Policy and Manual. The Signage Manual should be developed in conjunction with a graphic and/or industrial designer.

PRIORITY	TASK DESCRIPTION
Medium	Prepare an Archival Management Strategy. This strategy should be prepared by a suitably qualified museums specialist.
Medium	Prepare a venue document which coordinates the introduction of temporary structures.
Medium	Prepare Moveable Heritage Maintenance Strategy. This strategy should be prepared by a suitably qualified museums specialist or conservator.
Low	Prepare a revised Heritage Interpretation Work Plan. This review should be undertaken in consultation with suitably qualified specialists.
Low	Explore opportunities for implementation of sustainable technologies at the site during phases of change or during services upgrades.

Table 6. Schedule of implementation

## 7.7. Recommendations for Specific Conservation Works

### 7.7.1. Building Exteriors

PRIORITY	TASK DESCRIPTION
High	Ensure all buildings remain watertight and secure. Remediate as necessary.
High	Joinery: Repair, or if required, replace deteriorating window frames. Repair and repaint steel shutter doors.
High	Undertake a structural assessment of areas displaying the spalling of concrete.
Medium	External fabric assessed as having exceptional, high, or moderate heritage significance and fair condition should be inspected, and a schedule of repairs prepared to ensure any refurbishment works to the exteriors avoid loss of original fabric, detail and character.  The schedule of repairs should be aligned with the proposed cyclical maintenance plan.
Low	Façades: investigate and, where necessary, repair localised areas of deteriorating render and reinforced concrete.

### 7.7.2. Building Interiors

PRIORITY	TASK DESCRIPTION
High	Check interiors for falling damp and salt attack issues. Remediate as necessary.
Medium	Spaces assessed as having exceptional, high, or moderate heritage significance and fair condition should be inspected, and a schedule of repairs prepared to ensure any refurbishment works to the interiors avoid loss of original fabric, detail and character.  The schedule of repairs should be aligned with the proposed cyclical maintenance plan.



PRIORITY	TASK DESCRIPTION
<b>Low</b>	Explore opportunities to progressively replace acrylic paint in interior spaces with more breathable finishes to assist in addressing damp and efflorescence issues.

### 7.7.3. Barracks Complex Retaining Wall

PRIORITY	TASK DESCRIPTION
<b>High</b>	Progressively replace cement based mortar from the retaining wall with a more appropriate medium as necessary to allow water to shed.

### 7.8. Planned Maintenance

The City of Newcastle Council is responsible for the Fort Scratchley Historic Site, and currently maintains its building fabric, components, and setting as part of an ongoing cyclical maintenance plan, which includes regular inspections and monitoring of the building fabric. It is intended that a cyclical maintenance plan will be prepared for the Council and MALL Service Unit (as asset manager) to ensure significant fabric and spaces are addressed.

Future works to significant heritage fabric must be carried out by persons with relevant expertise and experience to interpret this CMP and to undertake works to Fort Scratchley and its components.

Where necessary, the Council will seek advice from suitably qualified specialists.

## 8. REFERENCES

### Books

Bingle, John. Past and Present Records of Newcastle, New South Wales. Newcastle: Bayley, Son, and Harwood, 1873.

Huntington, Henry William Hemsworth. Huntington's History of Newcastle and Northern Districts, edited by Ken Shilling. Lambton: Newcastle Family History Society, 2009.

Collins, David. An Account of the English Colony in NSW From Its First Settlement, in January 1788, to August 1801. Volume 2 . Sydney, University of Sydney Library, 2003.

Dangar, Henry. Index and Directory to Map of the Country Bordering Upon the Hunter River; The Lands of the Australian-Agricultural Company; With The Ground-Plan and Allotments of King's Town, New South Wales. London: Joseph Cross, 1828.

Ehlen, Judy. "Defending Britain's Soft Underbelly: Invasion, Fortification and Geology Near Portsmouth, Hampshire." in *Military Geoscience: A Multifaceted Approach to the Study of Warfare*, edited by Aldino Bondesan and Judy Ehlen. Electronic: Springer Nature, 2022.

Fullford, Richard Kennedy. We stood and waited: Sydney's anti-ship defences, 1939-1945 .Manly: Royal Australian Artillery Historical Society, 1994.

Gunson, Niel. "Lancelot Edward Threlkeld (1788-1859)." in *Australian Dictionary of Biography, Volume 2*. Melbourne: Melbourne University Press, 1967.

Joyce, R.B. "Sir Peter Henry Scratchley (1835-1885)." in *Australian Dictionary of Biography, National Centre of Biography, Australian National University*, published first in hardcopy 1976. Accessed January 18, 2024. <https://adb.anu.edu.au/biography/scratchley-sir-peter-henry-4552>.

Miller, Patrick. "Military architecture." in *The Encyclopedia of Australian Architecture*, edited by Phillip Goad and Julie Willis, 453-465. Melbourne: Cambridge University Press, 2012.

Mort, Richard Selwyn, ed. Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, New South Wales. Newcastle: Newey & beath Printers, 1986.

Tindale, Norman B. Aboriginal Tribes of Australia: Their Terrain, Environmental Controls, Distribution, Limits, and Proper Names. Canberra: Australian National University Press, 1974.

### Historical Records

Bladen, F.M., Alexander Britton and James Cook. "Historical Records of New South Wales." Vol. 9. Sydney: Government Printer, 1892-1901.

Watson, Frederick, Peter Chapman and Australia. "Historical Records of Australia." 33 vols. Sydney: Library Committee of the Commonwealth Parliament, <1914-1925;1997->.

### Journal Articles

Hirst, Paul. "The Defence of Places: Fortifications as Architecture [part 1]." *AA Files*, no. 33 (Summer 1997): 13-26.

Hirst, Paul. "The Defence of Places: Fortifications as Architecture [part 2]." *AA Files*, no. 34 (Autumn 1997): 6-17.

### Newspapers

"Imperial Troops." *Sydney Morning Herald*, July 30, 1870.

"City & District." *Newcastle Morning Herald*, January 26, 1877.

"Harbour Defences." *Newcastle Morning Herald*, March 7, 1878.

"The Torpedo Firing Station." *Newcastle Morning Herald*, March 27, 1878.

"Our Means of Defence." *Newcastle Morning Herald*, March 28, 1878.

"Fortifications at Newcastle and the Cablegrams." Newcastle Morning Herald, April 1, 1878.

"The Defence of Newcastle." Newcastle Morning Herald, April 11, 1878.

"The Camp on Allan's Hill - Portable Huts." Newcastle Morning Herald, June 28, 1878.

"Progress of Fortifications [sic]," Newcastle Morning Herald, May 1, 1878.

"Defence Works for Newcastle." Newcastle Morning Herald, December 16, 1879.

"The Coal Workings under Flagstaff Hill." Newcastle Morning Herald, May 20, 1881.

"The Newcastle Fortifications." Newcastle Morning Herald, May 24, 1881.

"The Fortifications." Newcastle Morning Herald, October 10, 1881.

"The Fortifications." Newcastle Morning Herald, October 13, 1881,

"Completion of the Fortifications Armament." Newcastle Morning Herald, April 4, 1882.

"Obituary." Sydney Morning Herald, August 16, 1888.

Newcastle Morning Herald, 22 December 1894.

"The New Eight-Inch Gun." Newcastle Morning Herald, August 16, 1898.

"Obsolete Guns." Evening News, August 15, 1907.

"Stockton Fort, Installation of the guns." Newcastle Morning Herald, September 20, 1913.

"The Volunteers." Newcastle Morning Herald, December 4, 1929.

"Volunteers." Newcastle Morning Herald, November 30, 1929.

"Major Dobson Fortress Commander." Newcastle Morning Herald, October 10, 1939.

Newcastle Morning Herald, 16 May 1940.

"Nobbys Italians Are Not So Happy." Newcastle Morning Herald, September 28, 1946.

"Historic Cannon Removed from Fort Scratchley." Newcastle Morning Herald, October 17, 1951.

"Memories of shelling dominate opening for Fort museum." Newcastle Morning Herald, April 5, 1982.

"Tourists now storm historic fort." The Dominion Post, June, 1999.

"Council pushes to stop Fort Scratchley vandalism." ABC News, March 28, 2007. Accessed January 23, 2024. [https://www.abc.net.au/news/2007-03-28/council-pushes-to-stop-fort-scratchley-vandalism/2228028?utm\\_campaign=abc\\_news\\_web&utm\\_content=link&utm\\_medium=content\\_share&utm\\_source=abc\\_news\\_web](https://www.abc.net.au/news/2007-03-28/council-pushes-to-stop-fort-scratchley-vandalism/2228028?utm_campaign=abc_news_web&utm_content=link&utm_medium=content_share&utm_source=abc_news_web).

"History: Gun force on duty." Newcastle Herald, October 7, 2016. <https://www.newcastleherald.com.au/story/4205738/history-gun-force-on-duty/>.

## Reports

Archaeological Management & Consulting Group Pty Ltd. Archaeological Assessment, Research Design & Excavation Methodology: Legacy House, formerly Dangar Chambers 45 Bolton Street Newcastle NSW. 2003.

Archaeological Management & Consulting Group. Research Design, Excavation Methodology & Heritage Impact Statement: Shortland Esplanade, Newcastle, NSW. 2013.

Australian Museum Business Services Aboriginal Heritage Study: Newcastle Local Government Area. 2005.

City of Newcastle Council. Newcastle Heritage Strategy 2020-2030" Accessed February 23, 2024. <https://newcastle.nsw.gov.au/getmedia/402df8eb-c7e3-4e60-b8d9-b15b77012ec6/4251-ADOPTED-Heritage-Strategy-2020-30-V4.pdf>.



Coal River Working Party in conjunction with the NSW Heritage Office. Coal River Precinct Walk brochure. Accessed February 5, 2024. <https://uoncc.files.wordpress.com/2008/03/coalriverprecinctwalk.pdf>.

Commonwealth Fire Board (Australia). Annual Report 1996- 1997. Canberra: Australian Government Publishing Service, 1977.

Federation of Australian Historical Societies. A Thematic Study of the Nineteenth Century Defences. Report Prepared for the Australian Heritage Council. 2019.

Godden Mackay. Fort Scratchley, Newcastle: Conservation Plan. 1992.

ICOMOS International Scientific Committee on Fortifications and Military Heritage. ICOMOS Guidelines on Fortifications and Military Heritage. Accessed January 24, 2024. [https://www.icofort.org/\\_files/ugd/57e5c5\\_ac4934abb83c47229061509712f8cc1c.pdf](https://www.icofort.org/_files/ugd/57e5c5_ac4934abb83c47229061509712f8cc1c.pdf).

NSW Department of Planning and Environment. Assessing Heritage Significance: Guidelines for assessing places and objects against the Heritage Council of NSW criteria. Accessed February 1, 2024. <https://www.environment.nsw.gov.au/-/media/OEH/Corporate-Site/Documents/Heritage/assessing-heritage-significance-guidelines-assessing-places-objects-against-criteria-230167.pdf>.

NSW Department of Premier and Cabinet. Statement of best practice for heritage asset action plans. Accessed February 27, 2024. <https://www.environment.nsw.gov.au/research-and-publications/publications-search/statement-of-best-practice-for-for-heritage-asset-action-plans>.

NSW Government Office of Environment and Heritage. Fort Denison: Conservation Management Plan. Sydney: NSW Government Office of Environment and Heritage, 2019.

Richardson, John. Military Forces of the Colony (Annual Report for 1886). 1887.

Schaw, H. Defences of New South Wales. 1887.

Suters Architects and Dawbin Architects. Fort Scratchley Historic Site: Heritage Management Plan. 2008.

Wilson, Graham and Martin Davies for J. Birmingham. Fort Scratchley Report, Vol. 2. Historical Report. 1979.

#### Other

Dictionary of Sydney. "Morell and Kemp." Accessed March 18, 2024. [https://dictionaryofsydney.org/organisation/morell\\_and\\_kemp#ref-uid=8f2d946a-e80d-f8e9-f963-072f092bedae](https://dictionaryofsydney.org/organisation/morell_and_kemp#ref-uid=8f2d946a-e80d-f8e9-f963-072f092bedae).

*Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979* (NSW).

Fort Scratchley Historical Society. "Redeployed! Using Fort Scratchley - the story of a location in transition." Multimedia. Accessed January 23, 2024. <https://www.fortscratchley.org.au/multimedia/>.

Howard, John. "Fort Scratchley." 2007. Accessed January 24, 2024. <https://pmtranscripts.pmc.gov.au/release/transcript-15489>.

Royal Australian Artillery Historical Company. "Artillery Register." Accessed January 23, 2024. <https://ehive.com/collections/203126/objects/1799629/sbml-4-pdr-11cwt-gun-on-wooden-naval-carriage-au-vic-puckapunyal>.

## 9. FIGURES

Figure 1. Detailed aerial view of Lot 1, DP407886 showing the various built elements located within the subject site.....	9
Figure 2. Location of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site within the wider Newcastle area. ....	9
Figure 3. The Australia ICOMOS Burra Charter process.....	10
Figure 4. Artistic rendition of view over Newcastle Harbour.....	13
Figure 5. View of Signal Hill and Nobbys Island, showing flagstaff. ....	16
Figure 6. Early plan of Newcastle in 1828, showing a fort and flagstaff at Signal Hill. ....	17
Figure 7. Detail of 1881 plan of Newcastle showing Signal Hill and fortifications.....	21
Figure 8. Detail from 1887 harbourmasters plan of Newcastle, showing Fort Scratchley .....	21
Figure 9. Sketch of Fort Scratchley in the Newcastle Morning Herald.....	23
Figure 10. Group at Fort Scratchley, Empire Day 1890. ....	24
Figure 11. Plans showing alterations to eastern arc gun battery for the installation of 6 inch Mk VII guns. ....	25
Figure 12. View looking towards Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, NSW, [1900s].....	27
Figure 13. Map of the Country around Newcastle, NSW, 30 November 1910, surveyed by Lc Cpl A. Barrett, Royal Engineers. ....	28
Figure 14. Aerial view of Fort Scratchley, showing additional WWII structures since demolished. ....	29
Figure 15. One of the 14cm unexploded shells fired during the I-24 Japanese attack on Newcastle. .	29
Figure 16. Servicemen checking gun shells, Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, 1952,.....	31
Figure 17. Service people marching at Fort Scratchley, 21 September 1959, Newcastle Morning Herald. (Source: Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 104 012631).....	31
Figure 18. Returning the 6 inch Mk VII guns to Fort Scratchley, c. 1978. (Source: Fort Scratchley Historical Society, accessed January 2024).....	31
Figure 19. Preparations for mounting the Mk VII guns on pedestals obtained from Georges Heights, c. early 1980s. (Source: Fort Scratchley Historical Society, accessed January 2024).....	31
Figure 20. Handing over Fort Scratchley to City Council, 20 May 1977. (Source: Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 104 009457).....	34
Figure 21. Chalked coal mine entrance (drift) beneath Fort Scratchley. These markings have since been washed away. (Source: University of Newcastle Library Special Collections, News, Opening of Coal River Precinct: Interpretations Exhibit, accessed March 2024).....	34
Figure 22. Phases of development at Fort Scratchley referring to phase descriptions in Section 2.9. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH).....	40
Figure 23. View towards Signal Hill and Nobbys Island. (Source: Settlement of Newcastle, taken from the base of Prospect Hill, 1812, T.R. Brown. State Library of New South Wales, FL3273101) .....	41
Figure 24. Plan of Flag Staff Hill, Newcastle. (Source: P. Francis Adams - Plan of Flag Staff Hill Newcastle - 2 April 1856 (Detail). University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, <a href="https://livinghistories.newcastle.edu.au/assets/display/299312-max?u=">https://livinghistories.newcastle.edu.au/assets/display/299312-max?u=</a> ).....	42
Figure 25. View towards Newcastle Harbour showing Nobbys Island still disconnected from the mainland. The flagstaff at point 'S' marks Signal Hill. (Source: C 40: Sir Thomas Mitchell field book: Port Jackson and Newcastle, 1828. Mitchell Library, State Library of NSW, 9AL4OL5Y) .....	43

Figure 26. View of flagstaff and pagoda on Signal Hill. (Source: Illustration, Newcastle from the Harbour, 1821, [artist unknown]. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, C918-0185) ..... 43

Figure 27. Sketch showing Harbour Master's residence on Signal Hill, also known as Allan's Hill after the Harbour Master. (Source: View of the infirmary, gaol, Harbour Master's residence etc sketched on the spot, c.1870, Margaret Laidler. Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 345 000256) ..... 43

Figure 28. View of Newcastle from Signal Hill. Note the view to Newcastle Customs House on the right (indicated by orange arrow). (Source: Newcastle from Allen's Hill (Fort Scratchley) (Allen was a harbourmaster), [nd], [photographer unknown], donated by Mr E. Braggett. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, A5194-019.5)..... 44

Figure 29. Volunteer Artillery at Fort Scratchley. Note the temporary emplacement structure. (Source: Fort Scratchley Newcastle, NSW, [1879], [photographer unknown]. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, <https://livinghistories.newcastle.edu.au/assets/display/298730-max?u=>) ..... 45

Figure 30. Floor plan of Fort Scratchley barracks complex. (Source: Newcastle Fortifications, Office Quarters & Soldiers Barracks, c.1884, NSW Colonial Architect's Office. Museums of History NSW, NRS-4335-9-[Plan2348]-84/1248) ..... 46

Figure 31. NSW Colonial Architect's Office plans showing site plan and elevations of barracks complex buildings. (Source: Newcastle Fortifications, Office Quarters & Soldiers Barracks, c.1884, NSW Colonial Architect's Office. Museums of History NSW, NRS-4335-9-[Plan2348]-84/1248) ..... 47

Figure 32. View of Newcastle from Fort Scratchley. The Convict Lumber Yards and Newcastle Customs House can be seen on the right (indicated by orange arrow). Shepherds Hill is visible in the distance to the left. (Source: Newcastle from Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, c.1880s, [photographer unknown]. Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 045 000121) ..... 48

Figure 33. View to Fort Scratchley outer fort from the inner fort. Note the ongoing construction of the dry ditch wall, gates and bridge behind the Old Guardhouse. The Old Guardhouse building is indicated with a red arrow to the right. (Source: Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, 1886, [photographer unknown]. Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 056 000329) ..... 49

Figure 34. Artistic rendition of view to Signal Hill and Nobbys Head. (Source: Newcastle, NSW, 1886, [artist unknown]. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, C917-0032) ..... 49

Figure 35. Floor plan of the upper tunnels level indicating phases of development. Elements shaded red were introduced during the 1889-1892 works. Elements shaded yellow were introduced during the 1910-11 works. Hatched elements indicate roofing/covers. (Source: Below Ground - Tunnel Level Plans & Elevations, 2005, Sutera Architects, adapted by CPH) ..... 50

Figure 36. Newcastle Harbour from Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, NSW, November 1890, Ralph Snowball (1849-1925). (Source: University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, ASGN0579-B24) ..... 51

Figure 37. Plans for magazine level of the tunnels complex. The magazine level remains mostly unchanged from its original construction, however, the eastern casemate battery, shaded red, was converted to an additional magazine during 1910-11. (Source: Below Ground - Magazine Level Plans, 2005, Sutera Architects, adapted by CPH)..... 52

Figure 38. View to Fort Scratchley. (Source: Newcastle East and Fort Scratchley, 1906, [photographer unknown]. Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 102 000036)..... 53

Figure 39. Artistic rendition of view towards Fort Scratchley inner fort. (Source: Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, N.S.W, c.1909, [artist unknown]. Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 163 000157) . 53

Figure 40. Fort Scratchley site plan showing additional WWII and postwar structures. (Source: Plan of Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, NSW, 26 September 1966, CE.E.Comd. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, M2994) ..... 54

Figure 41. The Battery Observation Post was modified during WWII. The observation level was extended over the ground floor stores, a single storey extension was added to the west, and a new steel staircase



leading to the observation level was added. (Source: Part Site Plan - North Above Ground, 2005, Suters Architects).....	54
Figure 42. Floor plans showing WWII additions. A new guardhouse and generator room were constructed to the east of the gates. The Old Guardhouse was extended to the west and a new rations block was constructed between the NCOs' Ablutions and the Old Guardhouse. Internally, a new wall was inserted in the Old Guardhouse separating the southern cell from the main room. (Source: Gate/Courtyard Floor Plans Lower, 2005, Suters Architects) .....	54
Figure 43. Aerial view over Fort Scratchley showing camouflaged structures following the Japanese submarine attack on 7-8 June 1942. (Source: Aerial photograph of Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, NSW, 1 December 1942, R.A.A.F. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, FN_402_03a) .....	55
Figure 44. View to Fort Scratchley from Newcastle Beach. (Source: Newcastle Beach looking towards Fort Scratchley, c.1920-1940, [photographer unknown]. Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 045 000119).....	56
Figure 45. View over Tasman Sea from No. 2 Gun. (Source: 6-inch MK II gun practice, Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, NSW, [1960s], [photographer unknown]. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, FNC_402_01) .....	56
Figure 46. Aerial view of Fort Scratchley. Note the absence of guns in the gun pits, dating the photo to between 1965-1978 when the current guns were returned to the fort. (Source: Aerial view of Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, Australia, c.1965-1978, [photographer unknown]. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, P3035-13).....	56
Figure 47. View of Barracks building western elevation. (Source: K.G. Edwards Photographic views of Newcastle, c.1971-3 Vol. 3 City (East End); Major intersections: 68. A Section of Fort Scratchley 13 Feb. '72. Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 047 000106) .....	57
Figure 48. Ablutions block ruins at Fort Scratchley, with city behind. September 1977. (Source: Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, NSW, Australia, 1977, [photographer unknown]. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, A8804-P0181) .....	57
Figure 49. View to Fort Scratchley from Horseshoe Beach, Newcastle, NSW, Australia, 1977. (Source: University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, A8804-P0184).....	58
Figure 50. View of Newcastle from Fort Scratchley, 30 January 1954, [photographer unknown]. Shepherds Hill is visible in the distance to the left. (Source: Newcastle Libraries, Hunter Photo Bank, 096 000084) .....	59
Figure 51. View over the mouth of the Hunter River towards Stockton and Worimi National Park. (Source: Newcastle port from Fort Scratchley, 1976, Graeme Andrews. City of Sydney Archives, A-00082419) .....	59
Figure 52. The western barbette was converted to an Artificer's Workshop at an unknown time and was covered with camouflage during the Second World War. The above ground roof structure is shown prior to its collapse (left, [nd]) and after its collapse (right, Jan 1983). (Source: Fort Scratchley Historical Society, accessed February 2024) .....	60
Figure 53. View of Battery Observation Post, looking north. (Source: Fort Scratchley, Newcastle, NSW, [1980s], [photographer unknown]. University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, C918-0014).....	60
Figure 54. Nobbys Head NSW from the summit of Fort Scratchley, [nd], [photographer unknown]. (Source: University of Newcastle Library's Special Collections, C917-0013) .....	61
Figure 55. View towards Fort entrance from inner fort gates. (Source: [View from Fort Scratchley looking towards Nobby's Beach, NSW] [picture] / [Loui Seselja], 1999. National Library of Australia, PIC NL38590/21 frame 10 LOC PIC Album 1011/5).....	61
Figure 56. View over Foreshore Park from upper terrace of Fort Scratchley. Customs House is visible in the background (indicated by orange arrow). (Source: [View from Fort Scratchley looking west along	

foreshore Newcastle, NSW] [picture] / [Loui Seselja], 1999. National Library of Australia, PIC NL38590/22 frame 1 LOC PIC Album 1011/5)..... 61

Figure 57. View from inner fort towards the outer fort and driveway procession. Shepherd's Hill is visible in the distance (indicated by orange arrow) (Source: Suters Architects, 2008) ..... 62

Figure 58. View of barracks complex buildings from the dry ditch. (Source: Suters Architects, 2008). 62

Figure 59. Fort Scratchley as seen from cnr Nobbys Road and Fort Drive. (Source: CPH, 2023)..... 68

Figure 60. Fort Scratchley site map showing numbering system. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH) ..... 69

Figure 61. View of the Hall and Workshop buildings from the outer fort driveway. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 70

Figure 62. View of Master Gunner's Cottage from inner fort gates. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 71

Figure 63. Master Gunner's Cottage, northern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 71

Figure 64. Signage at the Master Gunner's Cottage. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 71

Figure 65. Master Gunner's Cottage, southern elevation, showing rear wing additions. (Source: CPH, 2024)..... 71

Figure 66. Master Gunner's Cottage rear garden with Bofors 40 mm gun used at the Fort from 1962. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 71

Figure 67. Interior view of Master Gunner's Cottage, Administration Room. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 71

Figure 68. View of the Hall and Workshop buildings from the outer fort. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 72

Figure 69. View of the Hall building, looking east. (Source: CPH, 2024)\..... 72

Figure 70. View of the Hall and inner fort gates, looking north. (Source: CPH, 2024)..... 72

Figure 71. View towards Tasman Sea from the Hall. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 72

Figure 72. Workshop building, northwestern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2024)..... 73

Figure 73. View of the Workshop building, looking east. (Source: CPH, 2024)..... 73

Figure 74. Workshop building, southwestern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 73

Figure 75. View of dry ditch and fortification wall, looking west. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 74

Figure 76. View of dry ditch and fortification wall, looking east towards the inner fort gates and bridge. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 74

Figure 77. View of dry ditch and fortification wall, looking southeast. This section of the wall has been rendered and scored to simulate stonework (Source: CPH, 2024)..... 74

Figure 78. View of fortification wall interior from the Barrack building terrace. (Source: CPH, 2024)... 74

Figure 79. View to Mine Firing Station entrance from the dry ditch. (Source: CPH, 2024)..... 75

Figure 80. View down Mine Firing Station stairs. The entrance door is currently welded shut due to vandalism concerns. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 75

Figure 81. View of Searchlight Directing Station, looking southeast. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 76

Figure 82. Searchlight Directing Station, eastern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2024)..... 76

Figure 83. View of Searchlight Directing Station roof structure. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 76

Figure 84. View towards Tasman Sea from the interior of the Searchlight Directing Station, looking southeast. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 76

Figure 85. New Guardhouse, western elevation. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 77

Figure 86. New Guardhouse, eastern elevation showing parapet with embrasures. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 77

Figure 87. Interior view of New Guardhouse, looking southeast. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 77

Figure 88. Interior view of New Guardhouse, looking south. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 77

Figure 89. Interior view of northern strong room. Space is now used as a museum space by the Fort Scratchley Historical Society. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 78

Figure 90. Interior view of southern strong room. Space is now used as additional storage by Fort Scratchley Historical Society. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 78

Figure 91. View of Laboratory building, looking southeast. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 79

Figure 92. View of rear of Laboratory building. The ventilation units were in-filled with bricks at an unknown time. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 79

Figure 93. Entrance corridor to Laboratory building. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 79

Figure 94. Interior view of central laboratory room, looking northwest. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 79

Figure 95. View of the Gunners' Ablutions looking northeast. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 80

Figure 96. View of the Gunners' Ablutions looking southeast. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 80

Figure 97. Interior view of the northern room. The high level cisterns remain intact. The slate partition walls are clearly visible. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 81

Figure 98. Urinal space on southern side. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 81

Figure 99. Searchlight Generator Room signage. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 82

Figure 100. View of Searchlight Generator Room exterior, looking north. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 82

Figure 101. View of the Searchlight Generator Room and dry ditch wall, looking southeast. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 82

Figure 102. Interior view of Searchlight Generator Room. The generator plinth remains intact. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 82

Figure 103. Plan of Fort Scratchley Barracks Complex. (Source: Ian B.F. Wyness, September 1965) 84

Figure 104. View of Old Guardhouse looking west. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 85

Figure 105. WWII Extension to Old Guardhouse building.. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 85

Figure 106. Interior view of Old Guardhouse, showing central fireplace and a cell. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 85

Figure 107. Interior view of Old Guardhouse, looking south. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 85

Figure 108. Switchboard and meters in the central stores space. The floors are tiled. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 86

Figure 109. View of extension to Old Guardhouse showing Signals Centre signage. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 86

Figure 110. Interior view of Signals Centre. The space is currently used for museum interpretation. The floors are presently carpeted. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 86

Figure 111. Original ablutions in the western addition have been upgraded for use as visitor lavatory facilities. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 86

Figure 112. View of Canteen, looking north. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 87

Figure 113. Canteen, eastern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 87



Figure 114. View to NCOs' Quarters, with Canteen pictured on the right. Circulation within and between buildings is mostly achieved through narrow passageways. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 88

Figure 115. Internal view of the recreation room, looking south. (Source: CPH, 2023)..... 88

Figure 116. Internal view of the recreation room, looking west. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 88

Figure 117. Internal view of the recreation room, looking east. (Source: CPH, 2023)..... 88

Figure 118. Serving hatch located in Gunners' room. It was filled in at an unknown date. (Source: CPH, 2023)..... 89

Figure 119. Internal view of the canteen room. Note the two serving hatches which have been filled. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 89

Figure 120. On-site interpretation provides a brief context to the building and a diagram of the building's eastern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2023)..... 90

Figure 121. View of the Barracks building, looking east. (Source: CPH, 2023)..... 90

Figure 122. View to fortress wall and towards Newcastle Harbour, looking west. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 90

Figure 123. View of the Barracks building western façade. looking north. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 90

Figure 124. Internal view of the central corridor, looking east. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 91

Figure 125. Internal view of the central corridor, looking west. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 91

Figure 126. Internal view of the northern barrack room, looking north. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 91

Figure 127. Internal view of the southern barrack room, looking south. (Source: CPH, 2023)..... 91

Figure 128. View of the passageway towards the western fortification wall. NCOs' Quarters pictured on the right. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 92

Figure 129. View towards Artillery Store (Building 15) on the right and Tunnels entrance. NCOs Quarters pictured on the left. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 92

Figure 130. NCOs' Quarters, eastern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2023)..... 93

Figure 131. Internal view of the former kitchen room, looking north. The room is now used as a museum space by the Fort Scratchley Historical Society. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 93

Figure 132. View of coal bunker adjacent to the NCOs' Quarters. (Source: CPH, 2024)..... 93

Figure 133. Top view of coal bunker. The bunker was used to store coal needed for the Fort's cooking and heating needs from 1886 until well into the 20th century. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 93

Figure 134. View towards Commandant's Cottage, looking west. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 95

Figure 135. View towards Newcastle Harbour from Commandant's Cottage. (Source: CPH, 2023) ... 95

Figure 136. View of French doors with transom lights leading to northernmost bedroom. (Source: CPH, 2023)..... 95

Figure 137. View of four panel door with transom lights leading to pantry room. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 95

Figure 138. Reinstated white marble fireplace in the Officers' Sitting Room. (Source: CPH, 2023) .... 96

Figure 139. Reconstructed fireplace with timber mantelpiece in southern bedroom of Commandant's Cottage. (Source: CPH, 2023)..... 96

Figure 140. Interior view of wash house, looking west. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 96

Figure 141. View of eastern steps leading to the Servant's Closet. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 96

Figure 142. View of NCOs' Ablutions and Rations Block, looking east. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 97

Figure 143. The NCOs' Ablutions are lit by a pair of clerestory windows on its northern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	97
Figure 144. View over NCOs' Ablutions towards Newcastle East. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	97
Figure 145. View towards NCOs' Ablutions, looking south. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	97
Figure 146. Internal view of gunners' bathroom, looking south. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	97
Figure 147. Internal view of gunners' lavatory, looking south. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	97
Figure 148. Aerial view over the gun emplacements and central parade ground. (Source: SIX Maps and drawings by Sutera Architects, adapted by CPH) .....	98
Figure 149. View to Tunnels Entrance. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	99
Figure 150. Tunnel interiors are vented by a system of terracotta pipes and breeze blocks to keep the climate cool and dry. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	99
Figure 151. View to Gun Emplacement 1. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	100
Figure 152. Internal view of Gun Emplacement 1. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	100
Figure 153. Internal view of Gun Emplacement 2. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	100
Figure 154. View of Gun Emplacement 2 at ground level. Note the central section of exposed grating. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	100
Figure 155. The Small Arms Store adjacent to the Artillery Store has been converted to museum space. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	101
Figure 156. A typical ammunition lift from the magazine level. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	101
Figure 157. Internal view of Gun Emplacement 3. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	101
Figure 158. View to magazine level stairs. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	101
Figure 159. Example of lift machinery used to transport larger parts between levels. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	102
Figure 160. View to lift machine space. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	102
Figure 161. Internal view of shell store adjacent to the central magazine stairs. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	102
Figure 162. Internal view to central magazine stairs. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	102
Figure 163. Example of a lamp enclosure contained within the tunnel wall. (Source: CPH, 2023) ....	103
Figure 164. Ventilation shaft in Casemate Battery 2 chamber. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	103
Figure 165. Internal view of the northern casemate battery chamber, looking west. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	103
Figure 166. Internal view of Casemate Battery 1 since converted to additional magazine. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	103
Figure 167. View of gun mounted at Casemate Battery 2. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	104
Figure 168. Internal view of rear access path from Casemate Battery 2 chamber, looking east. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	104
Figure 169. Internal view of Casemate Battery 2 chamber. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	104
Figure 170. View of gun mounted at Casemate Battery 3. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	104
Figure 171. Internal view of tunnels leading from main magazine to the casemate batteries. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	105
Figure 172. Internal view of eastern store room within main magazine. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	105

Figure 173. Internal view of ammunition lift space for Gun Emplacement 1. Note the breeze blocks and vent providing ventilation to the space. There is also evidence of original signage on the right. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	105
Figure 174. Internal view of western batching room. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	105
Figure 175. View of tunnel towards tunnel entrance stairs. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	105
Figure 176. View of tunnel leading to magazine from southern magazine stairs. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	105
Figure 177. Evidence of previous openings in the main magazine rooms, western batching room. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	106
Figure 178. Stairs leading to tunnel entrance from the magazine level. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	106
Figure 179. View of Western Barbette, looking towards Stockton. (Source: CPH, 2024) .....	106
Figure 180. Entrance tunnel to Western Barbette, with interpretation panels on walls. (Source: CPH, 2024) .....	106
Figure 181. View to Battery Observation Post, looking north. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	107
Figure 182. Battery Observation Post, northern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2024) .....	107
Figure 183. Detail observation level with concrete outrigger projections. (Source: CPH, 2024) .....	108
Figure 184. Interior view of observation room, looking east. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	108
Figure 185. Interior view of single storey store room. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	108
Figure 186. 'Bleaching' sculpture by Michael Greve. Temporary installation as part of the Sculptures at Scratchley Festival. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	108
Figure 187. View to Nos. 1 and 2 Guns from the Battery Observation Post. (Source: CPH, 2023) ...	109
Figure 188. Entrance to the No. 1 Gun pit. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	109
Figure 189. A flight of stairs offers circulation between the gun pits and the blast wall. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	109
Figure 190. View of the connecting passageway between Nos. 1 and 2 Guns. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	109
Figure 191. Stores area underneath the gun pedestals. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	110
Figure 192. View of covered passageway beneath No. 1 Gun. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	110
Figure 193. View of No. 1 Gun, one of a pair of 6 inch Mk VII BL guns. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	110
Figure 194. Front view of No. 2 Gun. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	110
Figure 195. Exterior view of Artillery Store. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	111
Figure 196. Interior view of Artillery Store. (Source: CPH, 2024) .....	111
Figure 197. Detailed view of cracking and previous repairs on Battery Observation Post. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	112
Figure 198. Detailed view of cracking and biological staining on external masonry. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	112
Figure 199. Detailed view of efflorescence and biological staining on NCOs Quarters southern elevation. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	113
Figure 200. View of biological staining on Searchlight Generator Room western elevation. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	113
Figure 201. Detailed view of spalling of the ceiling. (Source: CPH, 2023) .....	113



Figure 202. Detailed view of spalling of tunnel ceiling. Note the surrounding rusted elements. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 113

Figure 203. Detailed view of delaminated render and exposed masonry. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 114

Figure 204. Delaminated render and efflorescence are present on the NCOs' Ablutions block exterior. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 114

Figure 205. Spalling is evident on Battery Observation Post concrete outrigger. Note the exposed rusted reinforcements. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 114

Figure 206. Evidence of spalling at the Searchlight Directing Station. As with the Battery Observation Post, the embedded reinforcements are exposed and heavily rusted. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 114

Figure 207. Detailed view of water staining and wood rot present on window sills. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 115

Figure 208. The Laboratory building's windows exhibit rusting of metal elements and deterioration of the window frames. Subsequent rust staining of the façade is evident. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 115

Figure 209. Rusted security bars with peeling paint, causing staining to the projecting sill. There are also signs of lichen growth around the windows. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 115

Figure 210. The external doors to the Searchlight Generator Room exhibit signs of deterioration with peeling paint, rust and delamination of the metal sheets from the door leaf. (Source: CPH, 2023) ... 115

Figure 211. Paint delaminating from the rusted steel shutter. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 116

Figure 212. Deterioration of door lintel with peeling paint and rusted metal elements. The door leaves also exhibit peeling paint and rusting. (Source: CPH, 2023)..... 116

Figure 213. Restored bronze lamp recess displaying minor oxidation. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 116

Figure 214. Restored bronze lamp recess with no visible deterioration. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 116

Figure 215. Restored lamp recess with missing bronze mesh, displaying oxidation. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 116

Figure 216. Blistering paintwork with some paint peeling. Salt accumulation is also visible. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 117

Figure 217. Peeling paint around timber window unit. (Source: CPH, 2023)..... 117

Figure 218. Peeling paint on ceiling of eastern casemate magazine. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 117

Figure 219. Visible salt accumulation and flaking paint on interior wall. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 117

Figure 220. Side view of No. 1 Gun. (Source: CPH, 2023)..... 118

Figure 221. Front view of No. 1 Gun. (Source: CPH, 2023)..... 118

Figure 222. No. 2 Gun. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 118

Figure 223. No. 2 Gun (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 118

Figure 224. Nordenfelt 1.5 inch Quick Firing Gun located in the central casemate battery. (Source: CPH, 2023)..... 119

Figure 225. 80 lb gun, in Western Barbette. (Source: CPH, 2024) ..... 119

Figure 226. 80 lb RML Gun located in the western casemate battery. (Source: CPH, 2023) ..... 119

Figure 227. Map showing the location of the subject site (allotment shaded red) in relation to the Newcastle CBD, Macquarie Pier, Nobbys Lighthouse, Newcastle Ocean Baths and Shepherds Hill Defence Site. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH) ..... 120

Figure 228. Updated significant views to and from Fort Scratchley. Subject allotment is shaded red. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)..... 122

Figure 229. View towards Fort Scratchley from the Tasman Sea. (Source: Bing Maps, adapted by CPH)	123
Figure 230. Expansive views towards Newcastle Harbour, Stockton and Worimi from Fort Scratchley, looking northwest. (Source: Steven Lerch for Google Maps, 2018)	123
Figure 231. Views 1 and 1a from corner of Nobbys Road and Fort Drive to the site are unhindered as the surrounding residential development has maintained a sympathetic profile that does not block visual access. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)	124
Figure 232. View 1, looking northeast towards the outer gates of Fort Scratchley. (Source: CPH, 2023)	124
Figure 233. View 1a, looking northeast to the inner fort gates from the driveway. (Source: CPH, 2023)	124
Figure 234. The elevated position of Fort Scratchley offers expansive views over and from the Tasman Sea. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)	125
Figure 235. View 2, looking southeast to the Tasman Sea. (Source: CPH, 2023)	125
Figure 236. The northern elevation including casemate batteries and Battery Observation Post, are visible from Nobbys Head. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)	125
Figure 237. View 3 to Nobbys Head from Fort Scratchley. The Worimi National Park is visible in the distance. (Source: CPH, 2023)	125
Figure 238. View 3, looking to Fort Scratchley from Macquarie Pier. (Source: Google Street View, August 2017)	126
Figure 239. View 3, elevated view to Fort Scratchley from Nobbys Lighthouse. (Source: Peter Graf for Google Maps, October 2018)	126
Figure 240. The western elevation of Fort Scratchley is from the Stockton Peninsula. There are numerous views possible from the different public parks that abut the water. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)	127
Figure 241. View 5, looking to Fort Scratchley from Stockton. (Source: Google Street View, October 2022)	127
Figure 242. View 5, looking to Stockton from Fort Scratchley. (Source: CPH, 2024)	127
Figure 243. View 5/6 showing direct lines of site to the port facilities in Newcastle Harbour and the Stockton Peninsula. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)	128
Figure 244. Views 5 and 6 to Stockton and Newcastle Harbour port facilities, looking west. (Source: CPH, 2023)	128
Figure 245. Views to the Newcastle CBD, including wharves, and the Newcastle Harbour port are possible from the upper parade ground at Fort Scratchley. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)	128
Figure 246. View 6, looking towards Newcastle CBD and the Hunter River. (Source: CPH, 2024)	128
Figure 247. Views of Fort Scratchley's western elevation from Foreshore Park are possible due to the lower elevation of the park and open urban design. Views to the park are possible from the Fort's parade ground, including Newcastle Customs House which is located on the western border of Foreshore Park. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)	129
Figure 248. View 7, looking to Fort Scratchley from the northern border of Foreshore Park. (Source: CPH, 2023)	129
Figure 249. The Victorian Regency style barracks complex is visible from the street along the site's western border. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH)	129
Figure 250. View 8 of Fort Scratchley's western elevation from street level. (Source: Google Street View, June 2022)	129

Figure 251. Views to the south are limited due to the increase of midrise residential developments along Shortland Esplanade. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH) .....	130
Figure 252. View 9 towards Shortland Esplanade and over the Tasman Sea, looking south from the parade ground. (Source: CPH, 2023).....	130
Figure 253. Views to Fort Scratchley from Shepherds Hill are possible, however, they are limited due to increasing residential development despite the higher elevation of the Shepherds Hill Defence Site. Views from Fort Scratchley to Shepherds Hill are becoming increasingly more limited due to the same development. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH).....	130
Figure 254. View 10 to Fort Scratchley from Shepherds Hill Defence Site. (Source: Steven Lerch for Google Maps, October 2018) .....	130
Figure 255. View 10, looking to Shepherds Hill Defence Site from Fort Scratchley. (Source: CPH, 2024) .....	131
Figure 256. Curtilage of the Fort Scratchley Historic Site. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH) .....	132
Figure 257. The Prussian 'system' of fortification showing interlocking fields of fire. A = Frontal, from the main ramparts. B = Crossfire, from the flanks. C = Local, from caponiers and keep. (Source: J. Ehlen, 2022).....	134
Figure 258. Fort Tourgis at Alderney, British Isles. Aerial view. (Source: Visit Alderney, accessed January 2024).....	134
Figure 259. Fort Nelson at Portsmouth, Hampshire. Aerial view. (Source: Royal Armouries, accessed January 2024).....	134
Figure 260. Fort Denison. (Source: NSW National Parks and Wildlife Service, accessed January 2024) .....	135
Figure 261. Bare Island Fort aerial view. (Source: NSW National Parks and Wildlife Service, accessed January 2024).....	136
Figure 262. Georges Head Fortifications Complex, Artillery Barracks building. (Source: Australian Heritage Photographic Library, accessed January 2024) .....	137
Figure 263. Garden Island Defence Precinct, former barracks building. (Source: Australian Heritage Photographic Library, accessed January 2024) .....	138
Figure 264. Fort Queenscliff, fortification. (Source: Australian Heritage Photographic Library, accessed January 2024).....	139
Figure 265. Fort Ballance, fortification. (Source: Wellington City Heritage, accessed February 2024) .....	141
Figure 266. Aerial view of Fort Jervis, Lyttleton Harbour. (Source: NZ History, accessed February 2024) .....	142
Figure 267. Overall site plan showing the relative significance ranking of identified buildings on the site. (Source: SIX Maps, adapted by CPH).....	178
Figure 268. Gradings of Significance Floor Plan - Tunnel Level.....	179
Figure 269. Gradings of Significance Floor Plan - Magazine Level. ....	180
Figure 270. Graded elevations - Barracks, Kitchen Block & Canteen. ....	181
Figure 271. Graded elevations - Commandant's Cottage and Servant's Quarters.....	182
Figure 272. Fort Scratchley permissible development map. ....	194

## TABLES



Table 1. List of abbreviations.....	12
Table 2. Summary Timeline of Events .....	38
Table 3. Table of Significant Views and Associated Images.....	122
Table 4. Significant Elements at Fort Scratchley .....	177
Table 5. Table of zones at Fort Scratchley and their permissible uses. ....	193
Table 6. Schedule of implementation .....	214

## 10. APPENDICES

## 10.1. Appendix A - Standard Exemptions under s 57 of the Heritage Act 1977

The information on the Standard Exemptions including guidelines can be found on the Heritage NSW website at

<https://www.environment.nsw.gov.au/topics/heritage/apply-for-heritage-approvals-and-permits/state-heritage-register-items/standard-exemptions>